

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR

U. S. GEOLOGICAL SURVEY

**GSMODS - A Personal Mineral Occurrence Database System**

**Reference Manual**

**Version 1.01**

by

**Bruce R. Johnson<sup>1</sup>**

**Open-File Report 87-636**

This report is preliminary and has not been reviewed for conformity with U.S. Geological Survey editorial standards. Any use of trade names is for descriptive purposes only and does not imply endorsement by the USGS.

<sup>1</sup>U.S. Geological Survey  
Box 25046, MS-930  
Denver Federal Center  
Denver, CO 80225

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. INTRODUCTION	1
Design considerations	2
Hardware requirements	3
Software requirements	4
Updating a previous version of GSMODS	5
The fast start	5
The slower start	6
Acknowledgments	6
2. DATABASES, RECORDS, FIELDS, AND VALUES	7
General Principles	8
Summary of databases contained in the GSMODS system	9
3. GETTING STARTED	11
Conventions	12
Data Organization	13
Starting GSMODS	13
GSMODS menu system	14
GSMODS Main Menu	14
GSMODS Utilities Menu	18
GSMODS entry screens	20
The Reporter entry screen	20
Map projections	23
Special characters and terms	23
4. GETTING INFORMATION IN	25
On-screen data entry and editing	26
Cursor control keys	26
Data entry defaults	26
Data validation	27
Multi-valued fields	27
Text fields	27
Special characters	28
Change prompt	28
The Locality entry screens	29
Locality screen 1	29
Locality screen 2	32
Locality screen 3	33
Locality screen 4	33
The Reference entry screen	35
Entering location information from the digitizer	37
Digitizer keypad use	39
Error recovery	42

5. CHANGING EXISTING INFORMATION	43
Modifying information on the data entry screens	44
Finding the record to change - Cross-Referencing	44
Primary cross-reference fields	45
Secondary cross-reference fields	46
The Cross-reference screen	47
Building cross-reference indexes	48
Record counters	49
Special characters and terms	49
Copying and deleting records	51
The COPY command	51
The DELETE command	52
Changing location information	53
Modifying locations in the Area Outline database	53
6. GETTING INFORMATION OUT	54
Selection criteria (Searching and Sorting)	55
The WITH clause	55
The BY clause	56
Creating GSMODS reports	56
Entering report parameters	56
key  syntax	57
Page repeating	57
Line formatting	58
Separators	58
The Report Parameter entry screens	59
Report Parameter screen 1	59
Report Parameter screen 2	61
Report Parameter screen 3	63
Report example	65
The report program	67
Creating Terminal Command Level (TCL) reports	67
The LIST command	68
The FORM command	70
The SELECT command	76
The PDISK command	76
Creating maps and overlays	77
The Plot Parameter entry screen	77
Plot symbols	80
Plot labels	80
Plot lines	81
The plot program	81
Combining GSMODS with GSMAP and GSDRAW	82
User-defined symbols	86
Example	86
Sub-polygons	89
7. ARCHIVING AND RESTORING INFORMATION	90
Creating a back-up copy of the databases	91
Restoring databases from the back-up copy	92
Transferring data between accounts	94

8. QUICK REFERENCE	96
Special words, symbols, and control keys	97
U.S. Postal Service state abbreviations	99
Deposit type codes	100
Geologic age abbreviations	103
Report parameter syntax	104
key  syntax	104
Page repeating	104
Line formatting	105
Column format codes	105
Multi-value selection codes	106
Cross-reference field list	107
Cross-reference screen options	108
System-defined plot symbol codes	109
Plot line codes	109
Boolean operators	109
Display colors	110

APPENDICES	111
I. INSTALLATION OF REVELATION AND GSMODS	112
Distribution Disks	115
The States database	116
Multiple accounts	116
The LOGTO command	117
II. CONFIGURING GSMODS	118
The System Setup entry screen	118
III. HARDWARE INSTALLATION AND CONFIGURATION	122
Digitizers	122
GTCO digitizer	122
Calcomp digitizer	122
Plotters	124
Hewlett-Packard 75xx series plotters	124
Hewlett-Packard 7475 plotter	124
IV. REVELATION COMMAND SUMMARIES	125
V. LOCALITY DATABASE	127
MD.DATA field descriptions	128
VI. REFERENCE DATABASE	150
MD.REF field descriptions	150
VII. REPORTER DATABASE	153
MD.USER field descriptions	153
VIII. AREA OUTLINE DATABASE	156
MD.AREA field descriptions	156
IX. SYSTEM SETUP DATABASE	158
Color choices	158
MD.SYS field descriptions	159
X. REPORT PARAMETER DATABASE	167
MD.REPORT field descriptions	168
XI. PLOT PARAMETER DATABASE	192
MD.PLOT field descriptions	192
XII. USER-DEFINED SYMBOL DATABASE	205
MD.SYM field descriptions	205
REFERENCES CITED	209
INDEX	210

## FIGURES

Figure 1.	GSMODS Main Menu	15
2.	GSMODS Utilities Menu	19
3.	GSMODS Reporter entry screen	21
4.	GSMODS Locality entry screen 1 of 4	30
5.	GSMODS Locality entry screen 2 of 4	30
6.	GSMODS Locality entry screen 3 of 4	34
7.	GSMODS Locality entry screen 4 of 4	34
8.	GSMODS Reference entry screen	36
9.	Sample output from GSMODS digitizing program	38
10.	GSMODS digitizing entry instructions	40
11.	GSMODS Report Parameter entry screen 1 of 3	60
12.	GSMODS Report Parameter entry screen 1 of 3 for sample report	60
13.	GSMODS Report Parameter entry screen 2 of 3	62
14.	GSMODS Report Parameter entry screen 2 of 3 for sample report	62
15.	GSMODS Report Parameter entry screen 3 of 3	64
16.	GSMODS Report Parameter entry screen 3 of 3 for sample report	64
17.	Sample output from report program	66
18.	Sample output from LIST command	69
19.	Sample output from FORM command: Reference list sorted by author	71
20.	Sample output from FORM command: Reference list with reference numbers, sorted by author	72
21.	Sample output from FORM command: Reference list with reference numbers in reference number order	73
22.	Sample output from FORM command using DUMP	74
23.	GSMODS Plot Parameter entry screen	78
24.	GSMODS Plot Parameter entry screen for sample plot	78
25.	Sample plot drawn with GSMODS plot program	84
26.	Sample plot drawn with GSMODS plot program and enhanced with GSDRAW	85
27.	GSMODS User-defined Symbol entry screen	88
28.	GSMODS User-defined Symbol entry screen with example definition	88
29.	GSMODS System Setup entry screen	120
30.	GSMODS System Setup entry screen with monochrome default settings	120
31.	GSMODS System Setup entry screen with color default settings	121

## Chapter 1. INTRODUCTION

### 1. INTRODUCTION

Design considerations	2
Hardware requirements	3
Software requirements	4
Updating a previous version of GSMODS	5
The fast start	5
The slower start	6
Acknowledgments	6

## Chapter 1. INTRODUCTION

### Design Considerations

The Mineral Occurrence Database System (GSMODS) was developed to enhance the organization, analysis, and display of mineral occurrence information commonly used for an assessment of mineral resource potential. Assessment projects of this type generally produce a large volume of heterogeneous data that are difficult to assimilate and to summarize in a publishable form. GSMODS is a tool that can be used to improve the efficiency of the assessment process.

GSMODS was designed by first defining the various products of the system (maps and tables). Once the required products were known, the required information to be fed into the system to produce these products was easily determined. The system must be capable of producing the various tables and map overlays that are needed for the typical (and the not-so-typical) mineral resource assessment with the least effort possible on the part of the user. This broad goal implies several more specific goals. In order to generate tables that are of use to a variety of projects using diverse publication rules, the system must be flexible. The system must be capable of searching for and selecting parts of the database from the whole; it must be capable of sorting those parts or the entire database on the basis of the contained data; and it must be capable of sending the results to the computer screen for proofing, to the printer for display, and to disk for storage. The format of tabular data produced by the system must be flexible. To generate the map overlays needed for a mineral assessment project, the system must be able to find, select, and sort the data prior to generating overlays. Mineral assessments often include data which are related to specific areas such as mining districts or mineralized zones and data which are related to restricted locations such as outcrops or prospect pits. The system must be capable of displaying the outlines of areas as well as the locations of point localities.

In addition to providing the user with the products mentioned, several secondary goals were identified during the system design process. The system must be as accessible and as portable as possible; therefore, the system is implemented on a standard IBM PC (or PC clone) with standard peripheral equipment. To provide a permanent record of the information generated by each project and to make that information available to subsequent projects in machine-readable form, all data should be easily transferable to and from the U.S. Geological Survey's National Mineral Resource Data System (MRDS) without modification. MRDS is maintained by the Branch of Resource Analysis, Office of Mineral Resources, U.S.G.S., Reston, Va. A utility to make these transfers automatic will be included in a later version of GSMODS; it is not included in the current version. Production of usable map overlays depends heavily on the precision and accuracy of the location data entered into the system. To provide this



precision and accuracy at the least cost to the user, locations of points and area boundaries are transferred directly from maps to the database using a desktop digitizer. Because mineral resource databases tend to evolve as additional data are accumulated, the GSMODS data input and update facility includes full edit capability enabling the compilation of data directly on the keyboard without the necessity of first writing draft copy in a fixed entry format. Because data may be available in bits and pieces from various sources, the system will accept partial and extremely incomplete data as the database evolves. Partially complete records can be flagged if necessary so that they do not appear in tables or maps until they are more complete.

GSMODS is intended to put as few constraints on the user as possible. It is designed specifically to be used for the manipulation of metallic mineral occurrence data, but could be easily modified to accept data more useful to assessments of non-metallic resources. Specific data items are not required for each entry; the user can enter as much or as little data as he feels will be useful for his project. Flexibility and efficiency are the prime goals of this system. Comments regarding the enhancement of these goals are appreciated by the system designer.

### Hardware Requirements

The following hardware is required to run the complete GSMODS system:

1. IBM PC, XT, AT, PS/2 (has not been tested), or close compatible with at least 320K RAM, high-capacity disk drive (such as a hard disk drive or removable-cartridge disk drive), parallel printer port, and serial port
2. Printer with parallel interface
3. GTCO Digi-Pad 5 digitizer (any size) with 16-button cursor

-or-

Calcomp 9000 or 9100 digitizer (any size) with 16-button cursor and Universal Formatter Option

4. Hewlett-Packard plotter (models 7470, 7475, 7550A, 7570A, 7585/7586, 7595/7596) or equivalent plotter capable of recognizing Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language commands

The system outlined above is the minimum necessary to run GSMODS. Additional hardware which will enhance the utility of the system includes the following:

1. Additional system memory. 512-640K RAM total is recommended
2. Numeric co-processor. Installation of an 8087, 80287, or 80387 (whichever is appropriate for the processor in the computer) speeds up the sorting process
3. A second serial port. Allows alternation between digitizer and plotter without having to switch the cables on the serial port
4. Graphics display. A graphics display (CGA or EGA compatible) allows complete maps to be generated using the combination of GSMODS and GSMAP/GSDRAW (see Chapter 6, Combining GSMODS with GSMAP and GSDRAW)
5. Hewlett-Packard 75xx plotter. Although the 74xx model plotters will work with GSMODS, they are not capable of generating filled symbols, are limited to small paper sizes, and must be run at slower communication speeds due to their limited buffer space
6. Removable-cartridge disk drive. Allows creation of large databases and makes backing-up the databases easier and faster

### Software Requirements

In addition to the GSMODS distribution disks, the following software is required to run the complete GSMODS system:

1. MSDOS or PC DOS version 2.0 or later
2. Revelation, release G; either the complete package or the Run-Time system. Revelation is a commercial database management system available from Cosmos, Inc., 3633 136th Place S.E., Bellevue, Washington, 98006. The Run-Time version of Revelation is only capable of running existing applications such as GSMODS. It does not include the tools to build or modify applications programs. Nor does it include documentation describing Revelation commands

Plotted output can be enhanced by the use of GSMAP/GSDRAW (Selner, Taylor, and Johnson, 1986) in addition to GSMODS.

## Updating a Previous Version of GSMODS

The installation procedure for updating a pre-release version of GSMODS is similar to the procedure for installing the system for the first time. The differences are noted in the installation and configuration instructions, Appendices I and II. The installation procedure will not erase existing data records.

There are new features and changes to this release of GSMODS which enhance the efficiency of the system and which correct problems with some of the pre-release versions. One of the changes to the system requires modification of older data files. This modification only affects plot parameter records which create filled symbols. In the old system, a filled symbol was created by adding 200 to the symbol number of the unfilled version of the same symbol. In the old system, selecting symbol number 5 would create an open symbol; selecting symbol number 205 would create the filled version of symbol number 5. In the current version, filled symbols are selected by preceding the symbol number with an **F**. The filled equivalent of symbol number 5 is selected by specifying symbol number **F5**. Therefore, all plot parameter records with symbol numbers greater than 200 must be changed to the new system by subtracting 200 from the symbol number and adding an **F** (Fill designator) before the number.

Another new feature of the current release is the addition of cross-referencing to the databases. Cross-referencing is used to index certain fields in each database so that records can be retrieved to the screen on the basis of their contents as well as by the record key. See Chapter 5 for more information on using cross-referencing. To make full use of the cross-referencing feature, existing data records must be indexed. After installing the new version of GSMODS, follow the instructions in Chapter 5 for building cross-reference indexes.

## The Fast Start

Are you in a hurry to begin using GSMODS? If so, here is a list of the minimum steps necessary to get the system running:

1. Read and follow the installation instructions in Appendix I. Both Revelation and GSMODS must be installed on your system.
2. Read and follow the configuration instructions in Appendix II. GSMODS must be configured to match your computer hardware setup.

3. Start GSMODS by entering the following command at the DOS prompt:

**REV {accountname}**

This command is explained in the installation instructions. You can browse through the system by making choices from the Main Menu. Help is available from any entry screen field by pressing the **F1** function key.

There is an index at the end of this documentation for those who prefer to read about portions of the system as they need them.

### **The Slower Start**

For a more traditional approach to learning to use GSMODS, read Chapter 2 if you are unfamiliar with the terminology of computer databases, and then read Chapter 3 for a more specific description of the GSMODS system. Chapters 4 through 6 can be read as the need arises. They are arranged in the order in which the data are normally processed: Chapter 4 describes the process of getting data into the system, Chapter 5 describes making changes to existing data, and Chapter 6 describes the process of producing reports and plots. These three chapters, along with the appendices, contain most of the reference material for the GSMODS system. Chapter 7 contains a description of the back-up and restore facilities. Understanding and using these facilities is a must once the volume of data in the system exceeds about 2 records. Re-entering information because of a failed disk is not very efficient. Finally, Chapter 8 contains most of the tabular material in this document in one place for quick reference.

### **Acknowledgments**

The author has benefited from many discussions with R. B. Taylor and G. I. Selner concerning the mineral resource assessment process and the design of microcomputer-based application programs. A preliminary mineral resource assessment database system, GS MRDS (Taylor, Selner, and Johnson, 1986), formed the basis for the initial design of GSMODS. Thanks are also due to Taylor for providing the Deposit Type coding scheme used in GSMODS. The map projection routine used in the digitizing and plotting programs was modified from code originally written by M. E. Gettings (USGS). The clipping algorithm used in the GSMODS plotting program was modified from an example in Foley and Van Dam (1983). Finally, many examples of RBASIC code published in Revelation Hotline (formerly RevTech) by Analyst Research Co., Longview, WA have been useful in the development of GSMODS.

## **Chapter 2. DATABASES, RECORDS, FIELDS, AND VALUES**

### **2. DATABASES, RECORDS, FIELDS, AND VALUES**

General Principles	8
Summary of databases contained in the GSMODS system	9

## Chapter 2. DATABASES, RECORDS, FIELDS, AND VALUES

### General Principles

A database system is nothing more than a collection of related pieces of information. The structure of the database system reflects the relationships between the pieces of information contained in the database. A database manager is a software tool which allows the user to define the structure of the database and which provides the user access to the database. A database system can be regarded as the electronic equivalent of a standard office file cabinet. Individual databases within the system can be thought of as electronic equivalents of the drawers in the file cabinet. The database manager performs the functions of a file clerk. The database manager chosen to implement the GSMODS system, REVELATION, is a commercial product of Cosmos, Inc., Bellevue, Washington. A copy of REVELATION, release G, is required to run GSMODS.

The GSMODS system consists of 8 interconnected databases. Each database has two names, an english name used throughout most of this documentation such as Locality database, and a system name such as MD.DATA. The 4 major databases are: Locality database, MD.DATA (contains all information that is specific to a particular site or area of interest); Reference database, MD.REF (contains bibliographic references which may contain information concerning several locations); Reporter database, MD.USER (contains data which are specific to the user of the system and data which rarely change from record to record); and Area Outline database, MD.AREA (contains the location data defining the outlines of district-type records). In addition, there are 4 secondary databases: System Setup database, MD.SYS (contains system configuration information); Report Parameter database, MD.REPORT (contains user-defined parameters for tabular report generation); Plot Parameter database, MD.PLOT (contains user-defined parameters for map overlay generation); and User-defined Symbol database, MD.SYM (contains user-defined plot symbol definitions).

Within each database in the system, the information is divided into records. A record is the electronic equivalent of a file within a file cabinet. Each record in the Locality database, MD.DATA, contains all the information that applies to a specific site or area of interest. Thus, each mine, deposit, occurrence, mining district, or mineralized area. which is considered as a distinct location by the user will be represented in the Locality database by a single record. Similarly, all of the information concerning a single bibliographic reference will be contained in one record in the Reference database, MD.REF; all of the information concerning a single reporter and the current project will be contained in one record in the Reporter database, MD.USER; and all of the geographic location information obtained from the digitizer for a district or area record in the Locality database will be contained in one record in the Area Outline

database, MD.AREA.

Each record is subdivided into fields. A field may contain a single character, such as a Y or N to indicate whether there has been production from a deposit, it may contain a word or several words such as a description of a tectonic setting, or it may contain several paragraphs of description of some aspect of the deposit. The information that is entered into a field, whether it is a single character or an entire page, is called a value. Most fields in the GSMODS system may only contain a single value. Whether the value is a character or a page, a single-valued field contains one value which can only be accessed by the database manager as a complete unit. Other fields, however, are intended to contain lists. These are called multi-valued fields. Within a multi-valued field, each item in the list is a separate value and is separately accessible by the database manager. The definitions of the fields, their lengths, their acceptable data types, and their relationships to each other make up the structure of the database. The complete structure of each of the databases in the GSMODS system is detailed in Appendices V through XII. A brief summary of the information in each database follows:

#### Summary of Databases Contained in the GSMODS System

Database: MD.DATA, Locality database

Purpose: Each record contains the descriptive information pertaining to one mine, prospect, occurrence, district, or mineralized area. Contains header information about the reporter, the name of the occurrence, the location, and the date of the most recent information update. Also contains information about the type of deposit, the mineralization, the host rocks and associated igneous rocks, and a list of references.

Database: MD.REF, Reference database

Purpose: Each record contains a single bibliographic reference including authors, date, and complete citation.

Database: MD.USER, Reporter database

Purpose: Each record contains the descriptive information pertaining to one reporter or one project locality. Contains the reporter's name and affiliation as well as the default state and country to be inserted in each data record.

Database: MD.AREA, Area Outline database

Purpose: Each record contains the locality information (in the form of linked lists of latitude/longitude pairs) pertaining to one district or mineralized area.

Database: MD.SYS, System Setup database  
Purpose: Each record contains one complete system configuration including information on the type of display, printer, plotter, and digitizer in use.

Database: MD.REPORT, Report Parameter database  
Purpose: Each record contains a complete description of a tabular report to be sent to the printer or an output file. There are fields which allow setting titles, headers, and footers at each level of the report as well as extensive formatting controls. Selection of data records for output as well as sorting of the data records are controlled by fields in this database.

Database: MD.PLOT, Plot Parameter database  
Purpose: Each record contains a complete description of a map to be drawn on the plotter. Header information in each record sets the boundary of the plot, scale, tick marks, and location on the paper. Additional fields control the plotting of data symbols, location labels, and area outlines.

Database: MD.SYM, User-defined Symbol database  
Purpose: Each record contains a description of a single, user-defined plot symbol. Facilities are included for defining both simple line figures and polygons which can be filled with a solid color.



## Chapter 3. GETTING STARTED

### 3. GETTING STARTED

Conventions	12
Data Organization	13
Starting GSMODS	13
GSMODS menu system	14
GSMODS Main Menu	14
GSMODS Utilities Menu	18
GSMODS entry screens	20
The Reporter entry screen	20
Map projections	23
Special characters and terms	23

## Chapter 3. GETTING STARTED

### Conventions

Standard type styles and terminology are used throughout this documentation to indicate prompts which are displayed by the computer and information which is typed in by the user from the computer keyboard. Commands which are to be typed are shown on a separate line. Keywords which have special meaning to Revelation or GSMODS are shown in capitals. Other words which are user-defined are shown in lowercase. All words which are shown in uppercase must be typed in uppercase; all other words may contain any mix of upper- and lowercase. Words enclosed in braces ({} ) are optional. Words or symbols that are printed on the screen by the system are underlined in the example commands. For example, the command

**;LIST MD.DATA WITH COUNTY EQ "name"**

contains three Revelation keywords (LIST, WITH, and EQ) which must be typed in uppercase, two GSMODS keywords (MD.DATA and COUNTY) which must be typed in uppercase, and one user-defined word (name) which can be mixed upper- and lowercase. Each command is "entered" or sent to the system by typing the command in the proper sequence on the computer keyboard and then pressing the **RETURN** key once. This key is in the same position on the computer keyboard as the Return key on a typewriter and may be marked with the word "Enter", the word "Return", or by a broken arrow to the left. When this documentation refers to one of the keys of the computer keyboard, the name of the key is printed in **bold print**. In the command above, the ":" is a prompt character which is printed on the screen by Revelation to tell the user that the system is finished with its last task and is waiting for further instructions.

There are several prompt characters which are used by Revelation and by the operating system (DOS is used here to refer to either PCDOS or MSDOS). In this document, C> is used to indicate a general DOS prompt. The actual DOS prompt which appears on the screen is a function of which disk drive is the current default and how the prompt string is defined. Revelation uses a : or a > prompt. The : prompt is used by Revelation to indicate that it is waiting for any command. The > prompt is used to indicate that Revelation has made a selection from a database (by searching and/or sorting) and is waiting for a command to tell it what to do with the list of selected records. It is most commonly seen after a SELECT command. For more details about Revelation commands, see Chapters 5 and 6. Within GSMODS, prompts consist of either a phrase which describes the information which is needed, or a question. Information requests are terminated with a colon and space for the user to type the information. When the information is complete, it is sent to the system by pressing the **RETURN** key. Questions are usually terminated with a query and can be answered by a single

character followed by pressing the **RETURN** key: **Y** or **y** for a Yes answer, **N** or **n** for a No answer. Many prompts also contain a built-in default. For example, the prompt:

Creating New Records (Default = Y) ?

has a default of **Y**. If the user presses the **RETURN** key without typing an answer to the question first, the system will assume that the default is what the user wanted and, in this case, proceed as if a **Y** had been entered.

### Data Organization

To most efficiently use any database system, the user must have a clear picture of the desired end product before attempting to organize the information to be entered into the system. Ideally, the user should be thoroughly familiar with the reporting and plotting capabilities of the GSMODS system before creating any data records. For beginning users, this is not possible. An alternative which works well for beginning users is to create a small number of complete data records including digitized locations, then generate the desired types of reports and plots before entering additional data records. Working with the report and plot generating programs early will assure that the necessary information is correctly entered in each record. For example, if a tabular report with text in mixed upper- and lowercase (figure 17, for example) is desired, it would be a mistake to enter text into the data records all in uppercase.

The **Site Type** field in the Locality database is important to the organization of mineral occurrence data (see Chapter 6, Creating GSMODS reports, and Creating maps and overlays, for examples of how the contents of the **Site Type** field affects the products). Organizing mineral occurrence data into districts or areas with each single-locality record "belonging to" a summary (district or area) record provides the maximum flexibility in the end-product reports and plots.

### Starting GSMODS

The GSMODS system consists of four main sections and several secondary sections. There are two main sections for getting data into the system (from the keyboard and from the digitizer), and two for getting data out of the system (to the printer and to the plotter). Before the system can be used, both Revelation and GSMODS must be correctly installed on the user's computer. See Appendix I (Installation of Revelation and GSMODS) if this has not been done. After Revelation and GSMODS have been installed, GSMODS must be configured for the computer hardware in use. See Appendix II (Configuring GSMODS) if this has not been done.

This section contains brief descriptions of how to accomplish each of the functions of GSMODS. For more complete

descriptions of the procedures and possible variations, see Chapters 4, 5, 6, and 7. Once the system has been installed and correctly configured, Revelation can be started by entering:

### **C>REV**

or by entering:

### **C>REV accountname**

where accountname is an account name that was defined during installation. Revelation is case-sensitive; the account name must be entered exactly as it was entered during installation. If REV is entered without an account name, the system will ask for the account name after Revelation has started. If a password has been specified during installation, the system will prompt for the password before starting GSMODS.

## **GSMODS Menu System**

### **GSMODS Main Menu**

When the account has been selected, the system will bring up the GSMODS Main Menu (figure 1). The heading on the menu contains the name of the current application (GSMODS 1.01), the current account (bottom of the box), and the time and date. The footer for the menu contains information on how to get around in the system. When the menu first appears, choice number 1 is highlighted and the first line of the footer gives more information on the action caused by choice number 1. The highlight bar can be moved up and down the menu list by the **cursor-up** and **cursor-down** keys or by typing the number of any choice. To make a selection from the menu, highlight the desired choice and press the **RETURN** key. There are two function keys which are occasionally used from one of the menus. The **Control-F5** key (hold down the **Ctrl** key and press the **F5** function key) will always cause the system to exit GSMODS and return to the Revelation **:** prompt (called TCL or Terminal Command Level). The **F5** key by itself has no effect within the GSMODS menu system. The **F9** function key will return to the previous menu if there is one, or return to Terminal Command Level (TCL) if it is entered from the Main Menu. To return to GSMODS from Command Level, enter:

**:MODS -or- :mods**

Choice number 1 on the Main Menu (Edit Locality Data) starts the data entry or editing process. If number 1 is selected, the first of four Locality entry screens will appear and the system will be ready to enter information for the first data record. Before starting to enter information into the data records, defaults for the fields which are common to nearly all of the records should be set. This is accomplished by selecting choice

```

GSMODS 1.01 - USGS Mineral Occurrence Database System
15:10:19 05 MAY 1987

1. Edit Locality Data
2. Login New Reporter
3. Edit References
4. Digitize Locations
5. Setup Plot
6. Plot a Map
7. Setup Report
8. Produce a Report
9. Utilities
10. Exit Revelation

ACCOUNT
```

F5=Toggle MAIN/LAST menu   Ctl-F5=TCL   F9=END menu   Retrn=Run menu option

Menu Choice 1: Enter new data records, or edit existing records.

Menu Choice 2: Create or edit default items for new reporter.

Menu Choice 3: Enter new references, or edit existing references.

Menu Choice 4: Enter locations of areas or sites from digitizer.

Menu Choice 5: Setup or modify plot parameters.

Menu Choice 6: Create map on plotter; map must have been setup using choice #5.

Menu Choice 7: Setup or modify report parameters.

Menu Choice 8: Create a Report on the Screen, Printer, or to a File; must have been setup using choice #7.

Menu Choice 9: Utilities Menu: System variables, Accounts, Back-up, Data Transfers

Menu Choice 10: Return to DOS from GSMODS.

Figure 1. GSMODS Main Menu.

number 2 from the Main Menu (Login New Reporter). To return to the Main Menu from the Locality data area, enter the word **END** in the **Record No.** field of the first data entry screen. To get back to the **Record No.** field if data has been entered in some of the fields, enter a **!** at any data entry prompt. For more information on the individual fields in the four entry screens, see Chapter 4, Getting Information In.

Choice number 2 on the Main Menu (Login New Reporter) brings up the Reporter entry screen. Before information is entered into the Locality data area, there should be a reporter defined to the system. Therefore, the first choice that is normally made on the Main Menu is to Login New Reporter. This entry screen is used to record information which is needed for each Locality data record, and which rarely changes. The information entered on this screen is copied into each Locality data record as the record is created. The user does not have to re-type this information for each record. To return to the Main Menu from this screen, enter the word **END** at any prompt. For more information on the individual fields in this entry screen, see the section, GSMODS Entry Screens, p. 20.

Choice number 3 on the Main Menu (Edit References) brings up the entry screen for the Reference database. This screen is used to enter each reference citation into a separate record. The references are then related to the Locality data records by a reference number. This entry screen is also available at the **References** prompt on the Locality entry screen so that references can be entered as they occur within the resource data. To return to the Main Menu from the Reference entry area, enter the word **END** in the **Reference No.** field. For more information on the individual fields in the Reference entry screen, see Chapter 4, Getting Information In.

Choice number 4 on the Main Menu (Digitize Locations) starts the digitizing program. It is used to enter location information directly from a map into the database system. To use the program, a digitizer must be connected to the system and GSMODS must be configured for the digitizer in use and for the correct communications parameters (see Appendix II, Configuring GSMODS and Appendix III, Hardware Installation and Configuration). Location information can be entered for individual sites (spot localities) or for lines of any type (area or district outlines, geologic contacts, faults, political boundaries, etc.). To return to the Main Menu from the digitizing program before control has been turned over to the digitizer, enter a **Q** at any prompt. To return after control has been turned over to the digitizer, enter a record number of **0**, and then a **Q** or **No** at the next prompt. For more information on running the digitizing program, see Chapter 4, Getting Information In.

Choices 5 and 6 on the Main Menu are used to generate maps on the plotter. Choice number 5 (Setup Plot) brings up the Plot Parameter entry screen. This screen is used to define each plot before it is created. The settings and selections made on this

entry screen are stored in the Plot Parameter database so that the plot can be repeated at any time without having to re-enter any of the information. Because the information is stored, a series of similar plots can be quickly generated by copying the plot record, making the changes that are required for the next plot in the series, and then running the plot program. To return to the Main Menu from the Plot Parameter entry screen, enter the word **END** at the **Plot Name** prompt, or enter a **!** at any other prompt. After a plot has been defined on the Plot Parameter entry screen, the plot can be created by selecting choice number 6 (Plot a Map) on the Main Menu. This selection runs the plotting program which then displays a list of the plots which have been defined. When a plot is selected from the list, the program generates the plot without any further action from the user. To use the program, a plotter must be connected to the system and GSMODS must be configured for the plotter in use and for the correct communications parameters (see Appendix II, Configuring GSMODS and Appendix III, Hardware Installation and Configuration). To return to the Main Menu from the plot program before starting a plot, enter a **Q** at any prompt. For more information on creating plots, see Chapter 6, Getting Information Out.

Choices 7 and 8 on the Main Menu are primarily used to generate tabular reports on the printer. The reports can also be directed to the display screen or to a disk file. Choice number 7 (Setup Report) brings up the Report Parameter entry screen. This screen is used to define each report format before it is created. The settings and selections made on this entry screen are stored in the Report Parameter database so that the report can be repeated at any time without having to re-enter any of the information. Because the information is stored, a series of similar reports can be quickly generated by copying the report record, making the changes that are required for the next report in the series, and then running the report program. To return to the Main Menu from the Report Parameter entry screen, enter the word **END** at the **Report Name** prompt, or enter a **!** at any other prompt. After a report has been defined on the Report Parameter entry screen, the report can be created by selecting choice number 8 (Produce a Report) on the Main Menu. This selection runs the reporting program which then displays a list of the reports which have been defined. When a report is selected from the list, the program generates the report and passes it to the selected output device. To return to the Main Menu from the report program before starting a report, enter a **Q** at any prompt. For more information on generating reports, see Chapter 6, Getting Information Out.

Selecting choice number 9 (Utilities) from the Main Menu brings up a second menu which has five entries (figure 2). The choices on the Utilities Menu are described in the section GSMODS Utilities Menu, p. 18. The use of the function keys is the same as was described for the Main Menu, p. 14. To return to the Main Menu from the Utilities Menu, press the **F9** function key.

Selecting choice number 10 (Exit Revelation) from the Main Menu terminates the current session of GSMODS and returns control to the operating system.

### GSMODS Utilities Menu

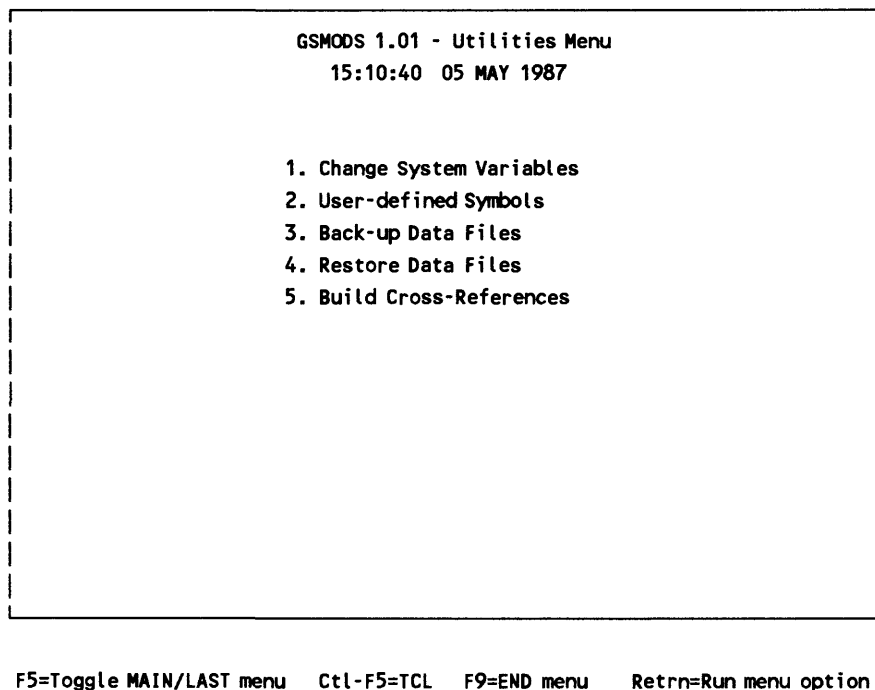
The first choice on the Utilities Menu (figure 2), Change System Variables, brings up an entry screen which is used to define the hardware configuration for the system. This information should be filled in when the system is first installed. Subsequent changes will only be needed if the system hardware is changed. Detailed information on configuring the system for specific hardware is contained in Appendix II (Configuring GSMODS). To return to the Utilities Menu from the System Setup entry screen, enter the word **END** at the **Record No.** prompt.

Choice number 2 (User-defined Symbols) on the Utilities Menu brings up the entry screen which is used to create or edit user-defined symbols. User-defined symbols can be created so that the user is not confined to the symbols which are pre-defined by the system. The definition of plot symbols is rather complicated and requires an understanding of the Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language. Detailed information on the symbol definition procedure is contained in Chapter 6, Getting Information Out. To return to the Utilities Menu from the User-defined Symbols entry screen, enter the word **END** at the **Symbol No.** prompt.

Choices 3 and 4 (Back-up Data Files and Restore Data Files) on the Utilities Menu are used to make a copy of the user's data files on a separate disk from the primary data files, and to restore the primary data from the back-up copy if necessary. Data files should be backed up regularly and often. Computer disks do fail! The back-up copy (or copies if you really want to be safe) should be stored in a separate location from the primary data files. Choice number 3 runs the back-up program which copies the current account data files to the disk(s) selected by the user. Choice number 4 runs the restore program which copies one or more files from the back-up disk(s) to the current account data files. Both programs delete existing data files by writing over them; use them carefully. Because the two programs have no knowledge of the account in use, they can also be used to transfer data from one account to another. For more information on using the back-up and restore facilities, see Chapter 7, Archiving and Restoring Information. To return to the Utilities Menu from either program, enter a **Q** at the first prompt.

Choice number 5 on the Utilities Menu (Build Cross-References) is used to index each of the cross-reference fields for each of the databases. Normally, cross-reference fields are indexed automatically as each record is added to the database. However, if data are imported to a database without being entered from a data entry screen or if a cross-reference index file is damaged, the index file will have to be re-built. This choice





Menu Choice 1: Change Display Colors; Setup Printer, Plotter, and Digitizer

Menu Choice 2: Create or Edit User-defined Plot Symbols

Menu Choice 3: Back-up Current Account to another disk or directory

Menu Choice 4: Restore Back-up Files to Current Account

Menu Choice 5: Build or Re-build Cross-Reference Indexes for each Database

Figure 2. GSMODS Utilities Menu.

from the Utilities Menu runs the cross-reference building program which can re-build an index for each of the databases. For more information on building and using cross-referencing, see the section in Chapter 5 on Cross-Referencing. To return to the Utilities Menu from the cross-referencing program, enter a Q at the first prompt.

## GSMODS Entry Screens

The Reporter entry screen is the one most users encounter first in the GSMODS system. For this reason, and because it is a relatively simple screen, the Reporter entry screen will be used as an example for entering information into any entry screen within the GSMODS system. Entry screen nuances which are not applicable to the Reporter entry screen will be covered in detail as they arise. The Reporter entry screen is reached by selecting choice number 2 from the Main Menu. The screen appears on the monitor as an empty form with the cursor in the **Reporter's Initials** field (figure 3). The information requested on this form will be stored in a single record in the Reporter database and will remain unchanged until the user returns to this entry screen and makes changes.

### The Reporter Entry Screen

What is the purpose of this data entry screen? The information entered onto this screen does not change very often, but is useful for every record. To prevent the user from having to type this information into every record that is entered, it is entered once on this screen and automatically copied to every Locality data record as the data record is created. Of course, this information can be changed at any time and data records created after the change will automatically contain the new information. This technique of propagating information that does not change from record to record is used throughout the GSMODS system to enhance data entry efficiency. The reporter referred to here is the person responsible for the contents of the data records, not necessarily the person doing the actual data entry. Also, the location requested here is the default location for data records, not the location of the reporter.

The first item requested is the reporter's initials. The reporter's initials form the key to this record. The key is the name of the record used by the database manager to find the record quickly whenever it is needed. The reporter's initials are used as the key so that the user can recall the record easily without having to type his entire name each time he wants to make a change to the record. Notice that there is room for 25 characters in the space provided for initials. What happens if the reporter has more than 25 initials that he wants to use? Probably a ridiculous idea, but it illustrates an important point. No problem, just type them all in. Try it! This is an important feature of this database system. The 25 spaces only

GSMODS - Reporter entry screen

1 Reporter's Initials	_____
2 Given Names	_____
3 Last Name	_____
4 Affiliation	_____
5 State	_____
6 Country	_____

Figure 3. GSMODS Reporter entry screen.

define the amount of the field that is displayed. They do not define the maximum size of the field. In fact, the maximum size of every field in the database system is the same, 65,535 characters. So, have no fear of typing data beyond the displayed length of any field on any entry screen, just keep typing and the display will act as an electronic tickertape, always keeping the part of the field that you are currently working on in view. Terminate entry of the reporter's initials by pressing the **RETURN** key.

The next field is for the reporter's given names. Enter all parts of the reporter's name in their proper sequence, except the last name. Again, terminate with the **RETURN** key. The next field requests the reporter's last name; however, suppose a mistake has been made in spelling the first name. The **cursor-up** key may be used to go back to a previous field. The **cursor-left** and **cursor-right** keys may be used to position the cursor within the field. Used alone, the cursor keys move the cursor one character left or right; used with the **control** key, the cursor keys move the cursor one word left or right. In addition, the **home** key takes the cursor to the beginning of the line, and the **end** key takes the cursor to the end of the line. The **delete** key deletes one character at a time. Typed characters will replace the existing characters in the default (replace) mode. The **insert** key will toggle between replace and insert mode. When in insert mode, typed characters will be inserted between the character indicated by the cursor and the character to the left of the cursor. When the corrections are complete, pressing the **RETURN** key or the **cursor-down** key from anywhere within the field will enter the entire corrected field; it is not necessary to place the cursor at the end of the entry before pressing the **RETURN** key. Enter the reporter's last name and affiliation. The use of an abbreviation for the affiliation is not recommended. Most abbreviations are not as widely recognized as most reporters would like to think.

The first four fields of this entry screen make no restrictions on the data that can be entered. Any mix of upper- and lowercase characters and any length of input are allowed. The **State** field is a little different. Although it will allow entry of either upper- or lowercase, it will convert all lowercase letters to uppercase. In addition, it will only accept valid U.S. Postal Service (USPS) abbreviations for states (see Appendix I, the States database, for information about changing the list of acceptable state codes for localities outside the United States). Try a non-existent abbreviation such as WZ. Data checking on entry is another feature of GSMODS that is used wherever possible. Many typographical errors are caught at the entry stage while the information is still easily available. The state and country information requested in the next two fields is the default location of the data records that are to be entered, not the location of the reporter.

After entering the default country, the prompt "No. of Entry to Change (RETURN to File Record)?" will appear at the bottom of the screen. This is called the Change prompt throughout this documentation. There is one more chance to check the entries before storing them. If any of the numbers 1-6 are entered at this point, the system will allow corrections to be made to the field with that number before storing the record. When the information is correct, press the **RETURN** key at the Change prompt to store the data record just created and clear the Reporter entry screen. To return to the Main Menu, enter the word **END** at the **Reporter's Initials** prompt. The information just entered in the Reporter entry screen becomes the default information for all subsequent data records which are created with the Locality data entry system (choice number 1 on the Main Menu). To change the default information at any time, return to the Reporter entry screen and either create a new record by entering a different set of initials and filling in the screen again, or enter the same initials and modify the information in the current record. In either case, the most recently accessed record will become the new default. Other options which are available at the Change prompt include: **END** (or **Ctrl-E**) to return to the Main Menu without filing the current record, **TOP** (or **Ctrl-T**) to clear the screen and start over from the top without filing the current record, and **DELETE** (or **Ctrl-D**) to delete the current record.

### Map Projections

This version of GSMODS contains transformation routines for only one map projection, Universal Transverse Mercator (UTM). Maps published by the U. S. Geological Survey (USGS) and most other publishers are labeled with the projection used to produce the map. Maps in the 1:250,000 series of the Army Map Service use UTM projections, as do the 1:63,360 (15') maps of Alaska published by the USGS. Overlays produced by GSMODS will match these base maps to the accuracy of the plotting device. The 1:62,500 (15') and 1:24,000 (7 1/2') maps of the lower 48 states published by the USGS use a Lambert Conformal Conic or Polyconic projection. GSMODS overlays will not match these base maps exactly. However, because the plotting system includes a capability for independently adjusting the north-south and east-west scales, the UTM projection can be used to match these maps closely enough for most purposes, particularly when plotting at large scales.

### Special Characters and Terms

There are a number of characters and terms which have special meanings within Revelation and/or within GSMODS. The following table contains a list of the most commonly used special functions as well as a description of what they do and where they are used. A complete list of special functions is included in the Quick Reference section (Chapter 8).

## Control Keys:

<u>Key</u>	<u>Active</u> <sup>1</sup>	<u>Description</u>
left <sup>2</sup>	All	Move cursor left one character
right <sup>2</sup>	All	Move cursor right one character
^left <sup>2</sup>	All	Move cursor left one word
^right <sup>2</sup>	All	Move cursor right one word
up <sup>2</sup>	Entry	Move cursor to previous field
down <sup>2</sup>	Entry	Move cursor to next field (same as RETURN)
Home	All	Move cursor to beginning of line
End	All	Move cursor to end of line
Ins	All	Toggle between insert and replace modes
Del	All	Delete character at current cursor position
backsp <sup>2</sup>	All	Delete character to the left of current cursor position

## Function Keys:

<u>Key</u>	<u>Active</u>	<u>Description</u>
F1	Entry	Display HELP screen for current field
F7	All	Clear from cursor to beginning of line
F8	All	Clear from cursor to end of line

## Special Characters:

<u>Char.</u>	<u>Active</u>	<u>Description</u>
>	GS-Entry	Go to top of next screen of entry set
<	GS-Entry	Go to top of first screen of entry set
!	GS-Entry	File record
!	GS-Program	Re-start program from beginning
-	GS-Entry	Stop copying defaults from previous record to current field
Q	GS-Program	Stop program, return to menu

<sup>1</sup>Notes:

All	Usable at any prompt
Entry	Usable at any prompt on any entry screen in the Revelation system unless otherwise noted
GS-Entry	Usable at any prompt on GSMODS entry screens only
GS-Program	Usable at most prompts in GSMODS programs

<sup>2</sup>Keys

- Left, right, up, down, and backspace are commonly represented by arrows on the computer keyboard
- ^ Hold down control key while pressing the next key

## Chapter 4. GETTING INFORMATION IN

### 4. GETTING INFORMATION IN

On-screen data entry and editing	26
Cursor control keys	26
Data entry defaults	26
Data validation	27
Multi-valued fields	27
Text fields	27
Special characters	28
Change prompt	28
The Locality entry screens	29
Locality screen 1	29
Locality screen 2	32
Locality screen 3	33
Locality screen 4	33
The Reference entry screen	35
Entering location information from the digitizer	37
Digitizer keypad use	39
Error recovery	42

## Chapter 4. GETTING INFORMATION IN

The previous chapter (Getting Started) described the entry of data into the Reporter entry screen. The rest of the data entry screens in the system operate much the same as those on the Reporter entry screen. This chapter summarizes the rules for data entry and describes the Locality entry screens, the Reference entry screen, and the use of the digitizing program.

### On-screen data entry and editing

The relationship between the space allotted to each field on the entry screen and the stored field length was described in the previous chapter. The line which is displayed on the entry screen for each field only defines the amount of the field that is displayed. It does not define the maximum size of the field. The maximum size of every field in the database system is the same, 65,535 characters.

### Cursor Control Keys

The cursor control keys work in the same manner for all entry screens. The **cursor-up** key (up arrow on some keyboards) may be used to return to a previous field. The **cursor-left** and **cursor-right** keys (left and right arrows) may be used to position within the field. Used alone, the cursor keys move the cursor one character left or right; used with the **control** key, the cursor keys move the cursor one word left or right. In addition, the **home** key takes the cursor to the beginning of the line, and the **end** key takes the cursor to the end of the line. The **delete** key deletes one character at a time. Typed characters will replace the existing characters in the default (replace) mode. The **insert** key will toggle between replace and insert mode. When in insert mode, typed characters will be inserted between the character indicated by the cursor and the character to the left of the cursor. Pressing the **RETURN** key or the **cursor-down** key (down arrow) from anywhere within the field will enter the entire field; it is not necessary to place the cursor at the end of the entry before pressing the **RETURN** key.

Detailed descriptions of the type of information which is entered in each field are given in Appendices V through XII (Database Definitions) and are available interactively by entering a ? or by pressing the **F1** key at any field prompt.

### Data Entry Defaults

Many fields on the data entry screens do not have defined defaults for the first record; however, when the entry screen for the next record comes up, the value entered in the first record becomes the default for the next record. If the data records are arranged carefully, default values for many fields can be copied



from record to record, reducing the number of data entry keystrokes required.

### Data Validation

Most data entry fields make no restrictions on the data that can be entered. Any mix of upper- and lowercase characters and any length of input are allowed. Where the choices of entry into a field are limited or where the format of the entry is fixed, input data are verified as they are entered (the **State** field on the Reporter information screen is an example of a verified field). Many typographical errors are caught at the entry stage while the information is still easily available. The help screens for each field and Appendices V through XII specify the valid entries for fields which are verified at entry.

### Multi-valued fields

Fields which have **01>** at the end of the prompt (such as **Commodities** on the first Localities entry screen) are multi-valued (list) fields. These fields can hold a list containing any number of values. As each value is entered, it is terminated by pressing the **RETURN** key. The system will continue to prompt for another value as long as values are entered. When an empty value is entered (**RETURN** key only), the system will proceed to the next field. The default system also works with multi-valued fields. If the previous record has 5 values in a multi-valued field, all 5 can be copied to the current record by repeatedly pressing the **RETURN** key. If only the first two values are desired in the current record, copy them with two **RETURNS**, then instead of pressing **RETURN** for the third, enter a **hyphen (-)**. This will terminate the default system for the current field. Any time that a blank field is desired and a **RETURN** alone would enter a default value, enter a hyphen instead.

### Text Fields

There are several "text" fields (for example, the **Production Description** field on the second Locality entry screen) throughout the GSMODS system. These fields are identified by having more than one line of display space on the entry screen. Any amount of information may be entered in a text field; if typing continues beyond the end of any line of the display space, the display tickertapes to the left to show the current portion of the entry. To start typing on the next line, press the **RETURN** key. The field will continue to accept data until either a blank line is entered, or a **RETURN** is entered on the last display line. The system will then display as much as possible of the text by filling the display area completely using automatic word-wrap. Text that does not fit in the display area is retained in the record and is available for printed reports and for editing via the Change prompt.

## Special Characters

Entering **END** (or **Ctrl-E**) at any prompt on any entry screen will terminate data entry without storing the current record and return to the GSMODS menu. Similarly, entering **TOP** (or **Ctrl-T**) will clear the screen and return to the top of the first screen of the data entry screen set without storing the current record and entering **DELETE** (or **Ctrl-D**) will delete the current record from the database.

Several special characters can be entered into data fields on all data entry screens in the system. The hyphen which terminates automatic defaulting, and the **?** or **F1** key which call up the appropriate help screen have already been mentioned. To copy the contents of a field from the previous record if the field does not have automatic defaulting, enter a **"** or press the **F2** function key. To skip the rest of a data entry screen and go on to the next screen without having to press the **RETURN** key for each field, enter a **>** at any prompt. Similarly, to return to a previous screen of the same record, enter a **<** at any prompt. Finally, if there is no more information to enter for the current record, entering a **!** in any field will store the information which has been entered in the current record, and return to the first screen for entry or editing of a new record.

## Change Prompt

After entering information into the last field on an entry screen, the prompt "No. of Entry to Change ?" will appear at the bottom of the screen. This is called the Change prompt throughout this documentation. Entering a number corresponding to one of the fields on the screen will allow changes to be made to that field. If the field is single-valued, the cursor will move to the first character position in the field specified. The cursor keys may be used to position within the field as described on p. 26. When editing is complete, press the **RETURN** key from anywhere within the field to enter the entire corrected field; it is not necessary to place the cursor at the end of the entry before pressing **RETURN**. When the correction has been entered, the system will return to the Change prompt awaiting the number of another field to change.

If the number of a multi-valued field is entered at the Change prompt, the system prompts for the number of the value to be changed. The following options are available:

Entry	Description
n	Edit value <b>n</b> in the multi-valued field list
ADD	Add another value to the multi-valued field
CLEAR	Delete all of the values in the multi-valued field
F	Display the next multi-valued window in a <b>Forward</b> direction
B	Display the next multi-valued window in a <b>Backward</b> direction
Dn	Delete a single value from the multi-valued field where <b>n</b> is the number of the value to delete
In	Insert a value between existing values in the multi-valued field where the new value is inserted before value <b>n</b>

When editing of the value is complete, press the **RETURN** key to enter the corrected value; it is not necessary to place the cursor at the end of the value before pressing **RETURN**. When the correction has been entered, the system will return to the "Which Value" prompt awaiting the number of another value to edit in the same field. To return to the Change prompt, press the **RETURN** key again.

To go on to the next screen (if one exists) from the Change prompt, enter a **>** or press the **RETURN** key. To return to a previous screen (if one exists) of the same record from the Change prompt, enter a **<**. If there are no more changes to be made to the current record, enter a **!** at the Change prompt to store the current record (complete with all modifications) and return to the first screen for entry or editing of another record. If the current screen is the last screen for the record (or the only screen), pressing the **RETURN** key at the Change prompt has the same effect as entering a **!**.

### The Locality Entry Screens

Most mineral occurrence data are entered into the system on the Locality entry screens. There are four screens for each data record. Selecting choice number 1 from the Main Menu brings up the first screen (figure 4) after a few seconds delay.

#### Locality Screen #1

The cursor starts at the **Record No.** field and a prompt at the bottom of the screen gives the default number of the next record. Records are numbered sequentially as they are entered into the system. If a new record is to be entered, pressing the **RETURN** key will insert the default number into the **Record No.** field. If an existing record is to be edited, the number of the

1 Record No.	_____	GSMODS Entry Screen	1 of 4
		2 Entry Date	_____
Reporter	_____		
6 Site Name	_____		
7 Synonyms 01>	_____		
8 Record Type	_____	9 Site Type	_____
		10 Information Source	_____
11 District 01>	_____		
12 County 01>	_____		
13 State	_____	14 Country	_____
15 2° Quad Name 01>	_____		
16 Primary Quad 01>	_____	17 Scale	_____
18 Latitude	_____	19 Longitude	_____
20 Loc. (Sec,T,R)	_____		
21 Commodities 01>	_____		
22 Deposit Type 01>	_____	23 Deposit Code	_____

Figure 4. GSMODS Locality entry screen 1 of 4.

Record No.	_____	GSMODS Entry Screen	2 of 4
_____			
3 Production Code	_____		
4 Production Description:	_____		
5 Host Rock Name 01>	_____		
6 Host Lithology	_____		
7 Host Rock Age	_____	8 Mineralization Age	_____
Associated Igneous Rocks:	10 Age _____		
9 Description 01>	_____		
11 Tectonic Setting:	_____		

Figure 5. GSMODS Locality entry screen 2 of 4.

record to be edited can be entered at this time.

The next field is the **Entry Date**. The default date is given at the bottom of the screen. In this case, the default is the current date from the system clock (You do set the system clock when you start-up the computer, don't you?). After the date is entered, the system reads the most recently accessed reporter information record from the Reporter database and adds the reporter's name and affiliation to the data record.

The system then prompts for the name(s) for the site being described. Enter the most common or most recent name for the site in the **Site Name** field and all other important names in the **Synonyms** field. If information is being entered for a district or area, enter the district or area name in the **Site Name** field.

The next three fields (**Record Type**, **Site Type**, and **Information Source**) contain coded information and are required fields which are necessary to provide search and sort capabilities. Acceptable codes for these fields can be found in Appendix V or on the on-line help screens for each field (press the **F1** function key at the appropriate field). These fields are followed by two fields (**District** and **County**) for storing the name(s) of the mining district (if one exists) and the county where the site is located. Records which describe a single site will normally only have one district name and one county name. Records which describe an extensive area may include several districts and may be located in several counties. After the last county name is entered, the system will fill in the **State** and **Country** fields from the information in the most recently accessed reporter information record.

There are several fields which can conveniently be skipped at this stage if the locations are to be entered later from the digitizer (a procedure which is strongly recommended). The **2° Quad Name**, **Primary Quad**, **Latitude**, and **Longitude** fields of each record will be automatically filled as the locations are digitized; there is no need to enter them at this time.

The location field (**Loc. (Sec,T,R)** on the screen) is a free-form field for entering cadastral location information. The information may be entered in any format which is useful to the user. The location field is followed by the **Commodities** field which is used to store a list of the commodities which have been produced or which are important at the location. Commodities are usually entered as chemical symbols unless a mineral or industrial material is the actual final product (mica or clay, for example). The list is usually entered with the most important commodity first and the least important last.

The last two fields on the screen, **Deposit Type** and **Deposit Code** are linked. For each entry in the **Deposit Type** field there should be a corresponding entry in the **Deposit Code** field. The information which is entered in the two fields is the same, the first is entered as a text description of the type of deposit

being described and the second is entered as a code for that type of deposit. The text description can be in any form which makes sense to the user; the codes come from a list included with this document (see Chapter 8, Quick Reference, or Appendix V, Locality Database). The deposit coding scheme is included as a suggestion only. However, if all users use this coding scheme, then searches for deposit types over large databases will be possible. This type of search is not possible over the text fields because each reporter uses different words to describe the same types of deposits.

## Locality Screen #2

Pressing the **RETURN** key at the screen 1 Change prompt brings up the second of the four screens (figure 5). The record number and name of the site are displayed at the top of this and all subsequent screens. Information for the second screen is entered in the same fashion as the first screen. The **Production Code** field accepts a single character (Y, N, or U) which indicates whether there has been any production from the site. It is used to sort the records which have recorded production from those which don't. The **Production Description** field is the first of several "text" fields on the Locality entry screens. It is a free-form field in which information about the production at the site or area may be formatted in any way which is useful to the user.

The next three fields form a linked set which are used to describe any host rocks which are known at the site. For each entry in the **Host Rock Name** field, the system will prompt for a lithologic description and an age for the host rock. Use the formal name for the host rock if there is one, otherwise use a complete informal name (Ksgw is not meaningful to those who work in other areas). A list of suggested abbreviations for ages to be used in all three of the age fields on this screen is available on the help screens (press the **F1** key at the appropriate field). A range of ages is indicated by entering the upper and lower limits (for example, Camb-Dev). Multiple ages which are discontinuous may be separated by commas (for example, Camb, Miss).

After entering the last host rock description, the system will prompt for the age of mineralization and then prompt for a description and age for any associated igneous rocks which are known from the area. The igneous rock description and age also form a linked set. Any number of igneous rocks may be described. The final field on the second screen, **Tectonic Setting**, is a text field which is used to describe the tectonic setting of the surrounding area when it was mineralized or when the deposit was formed.

### Locality Screen #3

Pressing the **RETURN** key at the screen 2 Change prompt brings up the third screen (figure 6) which operates in the same manner as the second screen. The third screen includes a multi-valued field for listing the ore minerals which are important at the site being described and three text fields. Full mineral names should be entered in the **Ore Minerals** field with the most important mineral listed first and the least important last. **Non-ore mineralogy** typically includes descriptions of gangue minerals and alteration. **Ore controls** may be structural, chemical, or other means of probable control of ore deposition. The **Deposit Description** field contains a general description of the deposit and all other important information which does not fit in any other field of the record.

### Locality Screen #4

Pressing the **RETURN** key at the screen 3 Change prompt will bring up the fourth and final screen (figure 7). **Search Keys** is a free field to be used for any keywords on which the user would like to be able to easily search or sort the database. The **Miscellaneous Comments** field is generally used for information which does not seem to fit anywhere else in the record. This is a good field to use for speculations on deposit origin, similarity to other known deposits, etc. The **Personal or Proprietary Notes** field is included for the reporter's private use. When data records are copied into master regional files, this field is not included.

The only new type of field on this screen is the **References** field. The **References** field is a multi-valued field which stores the reference number of each of the applicable references for the current record. When a number is entered, the system goes to the Reference database, checks that a reference by that number exists, and displays the first line of the reference so that the user can check that it is the correct reference.

It is also possible to add references to the Reference database at this point. Entering an **a** in the **References** field instead of a reference number will bring up the Reference entry screen (figure 8). The Reference entry screen is similar to the other data entry screens in the system. More information about the Reference entry screen can be found in the section, Reference Entry Screen, p. 35. If the **RETURN** key is pressed at the Reference entry screen Change prompt, the system prompts for another reference number. Entering **END**, instead of a reference number, returns the system to the fourth screen of the data record and inserts the number of the reference just added to the Reference database into the list of references for the current data record.

Record No. _____	GSMODS Entry Screen	3 of 4
3 Ore Minerals 01> _____		
4 Non-Ore Mineralogy: _____		
5 Ore Controls: _____		
6 Deposit Description: _____		

Figure 6. GSMODS Locality entry screen 3 of 4.

Record No. _____	GSMODS Entry Screen	4 of 4
3 Search Keys 01> _____		
4 Miscellaneous Comments: _____		
5 Personal or Proprietary Notes: _____		
6 References 01> _____		

Figure 7. GSMODS Locality entry screen 4 of 4.



Finally, at the Change prompt for the fourth data entry screen, pressing the **RETURN** key will file the complete record and return the user to the first screen ready to enter another record. To return to the Main Menu, enter **END** instead of a record number.

### The Reference Entry Screen

Selecting choice 3 (Edit References) from the Main Menu brings up the Reference entry screen directly (figure 8). This is the technique of choice if several references are to be entered at one time. The Reference entry screen can also be accessed from the fourth Locality entry screen (see description on p. 33). Creating a formatted reference list from the Reference database is discussed in Chapter 6, under the section on the FORM command. The previous chapter (Getting Started) described the entry of data into the Reporter entry screen in detail. The Reference entry screen fields are similar to those on the Reporter entry screen.

When choice number 3 is selected from the Main Menu, or when an **a** is entered in the Locality screen **References** field, the Reference entry screen appears with the cursor at the **Reference No.** field and a prompt at the bottom of the screen showing the next default reference number. Pressing the **RETURN** key will enter the default reference number and move the cursor to the **Authors** field. To make changes to an existing reference, enter the number of the reference to change in the **Reference No.** field. The authors of the reference are entered in the exact format that would be used for a formal citation. No terminal punctuation should be entered into this or the following field.

After the names of the author(s) are entered, the year in which the reference was published is entered in the **Reference Year** field followed by the remainder of the formal citation: title, publisher, volume, pages, etc. in the **Citation** field. If a **RETURN** is entered from the Change prompt, the system prompts for another reference number. Entering **END** instead of a reference number, returns control to the Main Menu. More detailed information about the Reference entry screen fields is available in Appendix VI, Reference Database, and by entering a ? or pressing the **F1** function key at the field in question.

GSMODS - Reference Entry Screen	
1 Reference No.	_____
2 Authors :	_____
3 Reference Year:	_____
4 Citation:	_____

Figure 8. GSMODS Reference entry screen.

### Entering Location Information from the Digitizer

The easiest and most accurate way to get location information into the database is by using the digitizer. Selecting choice number 4 from the Main Menu starts the digitizing program. To make use of this program, a GTCO Digi-Pad 5 or a Calcomp 9000 or 9100 digitizer must be attached to a serial port. See Appendix III (Hardware Installation and Configuration) for instructions on setting up the digitizer and connecting it to the system. See Appendix II (Configuration) for instructions on configuring the system for the digitizer in use.

The first prompt from the Digitizing program is Are you creating any new records (default = Y)?. If you have previously entered information about the locations to be digitized into the database, answer NO (n or N). If you answer NO, the system will check to see that each record exists as you enter the record number. If it doesn't exist, an error message will be generated. This facility helps to catch inadvertent errors in keying in the record numbers. If you answer the question YES (y or Y, the default), this check is omitted. At this prompt, or at any subsequent keyboard prompt, entering an ! will re-start the digitizing program at the beginning; entering QUIT (q or Q) will terminate the digitizing program and return control to the Main Menu.

The next prompt is Do you want a printed listing (default = Y)? It is a good idea to keep a printed record of what you have done, particularly as you are getting used to the system (see example, figure 9). The default answer is YES. If you choose to have a printed listing, be sure the printer is connected and turned on. If the printer is not available, the program will wait patiently for you to turn it on, but will not warn you that it is waiting. It can be quite frustrating trying to figure out why it is not working. The program then requests the name of the primary quadrangle, which is the quadrangle that you are going to digitize from. Enter the name exactly as you would like it to appear in the Locality data records; it will be automatically inserted into the data record for each location that you digitize. Then the program prompts for the Scale of the primary quadrangle. Enter the denominator of the fractional scale without punctuation. For example, enter 24000, not 1:24,000 or 1/24000 or 24,000. The scale is used for several tasks. First, the scale is automatically entered into the Locality data record for each location digitized. Second, the scale of the map being digitized is checked to see that it corresponds to the scale entered here. If not, an error message is generated. The north-south scale and the east-west scale of the map are also checked to see if they are reasonably close to the same. These checks catch many errors in the entry of map corners. The program then prompts for the name of the 2° quadrangle containing the locations to be digitized. This entry is also automatically inserted in each Locality data record as the locations are being digitized.

## GSMODS Digitizing Program

## Entering New Records

Primary Quadrangle = Poncha Pass  
 Scale = 1:24000  
 2° Quadrangle = Montrose

	Latitude	Longitude
NW Corner	38 25 00 N	106 02 30 W
SW Corner	38 22 30 N	106 02 30 W
SE Corner	38 22 30 N	106 00 00 W
NE Corner	38 25 00 N	106 00 00 W

## Actual Scale of Map

N - S 1:24009  
 E - W 1:23945

Record No.	Latitude	Longitude
100	38 24 .70 N	106 2 10.97 W
100	38 24 15.92 N	106 2 31.82 W
	38 23 43.47 N	106 2 31.38 W
	38 23 43.81 N	106 1 50.18 W
	38 24 16.14 N	106 1 50.64 W
	38 24 15.92 N	106 2 31.82 W

Area = .39 sq. mi.

Figure 9. Sample output from GSMODS digitizing program.

The program next prompts for the latitude and longitude of the corner points of the area to be digitized. It first requests the latitude and longitude of the northwest corner. All latitudes must be entered in the following format: **dd mm ss N** or **dd mm ss S**; all longitudes must be entered in the following format: **ddd mm ss E** or **ddd mm ss W**. The map may be oriented in any direction on the digitizer as long as the corners are always entered in the correct order, northwest, southwest, southeast, northeast. The program defaults assume that the area to be digitized is rectangular; once the latitude and longitude of the northwest corner have been entered, it offers those values as defaults for the latitude of the northeast corner and the longitude of the southwest corner, etc. These defaults can be overridden if the area is not rectangular by entering the correct values for each corner. The program then asks if the corner values are correct. The user has one last chance to check that the data has been entered correctly.

A message is then printed on the bottom of the screen to be sure that the digitizer is connected and turned on. After being sure that the digitizer is on, press **RETURN** and the system will check and clear the communications line. This takes about 15 seconds. If a message to enter the northwest corner on the digitizer does not appear within about 15 seconds, there is something wrong with the communications between the computer and the digitizer. Sometimes it can be fixed by re-starting the system (press the **Ctrl**, **Alt**, and **Del** keys simultaneously to re-boot the computer) and re-entering the digitization program by re-starting Revelation and GSMODS and then selecting choice number 4 from the Main Menu. Do not turn off the digitizer during the process. If it still does not work, check the settings of the digitizer and the system configuration settings (see Appendices II and III, p. 118, 122) one more time. Often the problem is in having different baud rates on the digitizer and in the system configuration file.

When the message to enter the corner on the digitizer comes up, be sure that the map is attached to the digitizer so that it cannot move and so that the corners to be used for registration are within the active area of the digitizer. From this point until all the data has been entered for this section of map, the program is run entirely from the digitizer.

Place the digitizer cursor over each corner of the map, in the correct sequence, and press the **0** key on the cursor keypad. The system will beep at each entry, and after the fourth corner, the location entry instructions will appear on the screen (figure 10).

### Digitizer Keypad Use

For each location, first enter the record number from the cursor keypad, terminating the number with the **A** key. On the digitizer, the **A** key acts as a **RETURN** key. A site (single point)

GSMODS Digitizing Program		
Instructions:		
Enter data on digitizer as follows:		
1. At long beep enter record number, max. 5 digits. Terminate record no. with "A" key. (Record No. = 0 to exit)		
2. At double beep enter data using keys as follows:		
0 key - Point on line or area		
1 key - Single point, center point of area, or last point on line		
2 key - Last point, close area		
C key - Continue previous line with same record number		
D key - Delete most recent line or area from this record		
Center point of an area and its outline are entered separately with the same record number. Please be sure to enter both.		
Record No.	Latitude	Longitude
100	37 17 27.04 N	88 17 25.91 W
Area = 49.86 sq. mi.		
Enter Record No.		

Figure 10. GSMODS digitizing entry instructions.

location is then entered by placing the cursor over the point on the map and pressing the 1 key. The system automatically calculates the latitude and longitude of the point and stores that information in the data record. Area records (mining districts, mineralized areas, etc.) should be entered into the system twice. Enter first as if it was a site location by entering the record number and then digitizing a central locality in the area with the 1 key. This places a latitude/longitude pair and the quadrangle information into the Locality data record. Then enter the record number again and digitize the outline of the area. This is done using the 0, 1, and 2 keys. Move the cursor along the outline of the area pressing the 0 key as often as you'd like a point to appear on the outline, terminating with either the 1 key or the 2 key.

The 1 key terminates the outline at the point where the key is pressed. It is used when digitizing a line which does not close upon itself within the current map segment. It is possible to continue the line on another map segment at a later time. Just be sure that the segments of the line are digitized in the order and in the direction in which the line is to be drawn. The 2 key terminates and closes the outline by adding the first point digitized to the end of the line. Thus, the 2 key should be pressed at the last point just before returning to the starting point.

The C key on the cursor keypad is used to continue a line or area outline from one map to another. A portion of the line or area outline is digitized from the first map and the line is terminated with the 1 key at the map boundary. When the adjacent map is being digitized, the record number is entered again and then the C key is entered to tell the system to Continue digitizing a previously entered line. The line is then continued using the 0 key and terminated again with the 1 key. The line can be followed through as many maps as necessary, so long as the maps are digitized sequentially along the line. If the line terminates on a map other than the original map, or if the line does not form a closed area, terminate the final line segment with the 1 key. If the line returns to the original map sheet and forms a closed area, terminate the line with the 2 key just as if the entire area had been included on a single map.

If an area outline continues on more than one map, the system does not add subsequent map names, beyond the first, to the data record. To assure a correct data record, the user must add the subsequent map names and scales to the data record in the Locality database.

If a record number is entered more than once without the C key being used, the system will assume that you want to add another line or area to an existing record. This technique can be used to enter a series of unconnected area outlines which are all described by the same Locality data record, a series of placer deposit areas, for example. It can also be used to digitize a series of lines (e.g. county outlines) by creating a

dummy record in the Locality database and then digitizing all of the lines using the same record number.

When the outline of an area is digitized, the system checks the record number in the Locality database to be sure it is an area record (first character of the **Record Type** field equals 'A'). If it finds that the record is a site record, the system beeps four times to indicate that an error has been made and then asks if you really meant to digitize a line for a site record. As the points and areas are digitized, the latitude/longitude pairs are displayed on the screen and listed on the printer. At the termination of a closed area outline, the system also displays the area that has been enclosed in square miles. To terminate entry from the current map segment, enter a record number of 0. The system will then ask if you'd like to digitize locations from another map. A YES answer will re-start the program at the beginning; a NO answer will return control to the Main Menu.

### Error Recovery

There are several methods of error recovery from the digitizer. Single site locations can always be corrected by simply re-digitizing the record. The new information will overwrite any previous information. If a record number is entered and then the D (Delete) key on the digitizer keypad is pressed, the most recently entered line or area outline for that record will be deleted. To delete all of the lines or areas from a record, continue to enter the record number and the D key until the system informs you that all of the line segments have been deleted for that record. Thus, you can delete and re-digitize area outline information.



## Chapter 5. CHANGING EXISTING INFORMATION

### 5. CHANGING EXISTING INFORMATION

Modifying information on the data entry screens	44
Finding the record to change - Cross-Referencing	44
Primary cross-reference fields	45
Secondary cross-reference fields	46
The Cross-reference screen	47
Building cross-reference indexes	48
Record counters	49
Special characters and terms	49
Copying and deleting records	51
The COPY command	51
The DELETE command	52
Changing location information	53
Modifying locations in the Area Outline database	53

## Chapter 5. CHANGING EXISTING INFORMATION

### Modifying Information on the Data Entry Screens

To make changes to the information which is stored in any of the databases in the GSMODS system, the record which is to be changed must be displayed on the data entry screen. The data entry screen is displayed by making the same choice from the Main Menu that would be made to enter information into a new record. If a Locality record is to be changed, select choice number 1 from the Main Menu; if a reference is to be changed, select choice number 3, etc. When the correct data entry screen is displayed, the system will prompt for the key to the record to be changed (**Record No.**, **Reference No.**, etc.). Instead of pressing the **RETURN** key to create a new record, enter the key of the record to be changed. The key will be a number for records in the Locality database, Reference database, User-defined Symbol database, and System Setup database; a record name for records in the Report Parameter database and the Plot Parameter database; or the reporter's initials for records in the Reporter database.

If the key to an existing record is entered, the system will retrieve the record and display the first screen of information as it currently exists in the database. The system will then prompt for the number of a field to change (the Change prompt). Entering a number corresponding to one of the fields on the screen will allow changes to be made to that field. If the field is single-valued, the cursor will move to the first character position in the field specified. If the number of a multi-valued field is entered, the system prompts for the number of the value to be changed. Any of the cursor control keys, special characters, or functions described in Chapter 4, On-screen data entry and editing, may be used while editing an existing record.

### Finding the Record to Change - Cross-Referencing

If the key to the desired record is not known, in most cases the database can be searched for the record on the basis of information which is stored in the record. The search can be based on any information which is stored in a cross-referenced (indexed) field. The Area Outline and System Setup databases have no cross-referenced fields. The following fields are cross-referenced in the remaining databases:

## Locality database:

SITE	*
SYNONYMS	*
DISTRICT	
COUNTY	
2DEG.QUAD	
PRIME.QUAD	
COMMODITIES	
DEP.CODE	
ORE.MINERAL	
KEY	
REF.NO	

## Reference database:

AUTH.NAME	*
REF.CIT	*

## Reporter database:

USER.LNAME	*
------------	---

## Plot Parameter database:

NSCALE	*
NOTES	*

## User-defined Symbol database:

NAME	*
NOTES	*

## Report Parameter database:

COMMENT	*
TITLE	*

\* Indicates a primary cross-reference field (see next section)

Retrieving an existing record on the basis of cross-referenced information is accomplished by entering a search parameter at the record key prompt. All search parameters begin with a \ (backslash) character.

**Primary Cross-Reference Fields**

Primary cross-reference fields are indicated in the list above by an \* after the field name. These are the fields which are most often used to retrieve records. The only database which has fields which are secondary cross-reference fields is the Locality database. Retrieving records on the basis of the contents of secondary cross-reference fields is described in the

following section. To retrieve a record by all or part of the contents of a primary cross-referenced field, enter a \ followed by the word or words to be used for the search into the key field instead of a record key. For example, the following search parameter may be entered into the **Record No.** field of the Locality database.

\Amethyst

This entry in the **Record No.** field will cause the system to search for all records in the database which have the word Amethyst in either the **Site Name** field or the **Synonyms** field. The system ignores case for this search, so the entry may be made in either upper- or lowercase. There is no space between the \ and the search word(s). If only one record is found, the system will display the first page of the record for editing. If more than one record is found, the system will display a list of the records which match the search parameter on the Cross-reference screen, so that the correct record can be selected.

More than one word can be specified for the search by separating the words by a space. For example,

\amethyst mine

This entry in the **Record No.** field of the Locality database will cause the system to search for all records with both the word amethyst and the word mine in the **Site Name** or the **Synonyms** field. Retrieving by cross-referenced information works similarly for the other databases which have primary cross-reference fields. Entering a \ followed by the word or words to search for will cause the system to search for records which have all the words specified in any of the primary cross-reference field(s). If more than one word is specified, all records which contain the search words in any combination of the primary cross-reference fields will be selected; the words do not all have to be in the same field.

## Secondary Cross-Reference Fields

Fields other than the **Site Name** and **Synonyms** fields can also be searched to find a specific record in the Locality database. These secondary cross-reference fields are shown in the list on p. 45 without an \* following the field name. To use a secondary cross-reference field for the search, the system ID for the field must be specified in addition to the search word(s). System IDs for each cross-referenced field are given in the list on p. 45 as well as on the Locality database help screens. For example, to find a record which has Au entered in the **Commodities** field, enter

\commodities=Au

at the **Record No.** prompt. There are no spaces in this entry. If

only one record is found, the system will display the first page of the record for editing. If more than one record is found, the system will display a list of the records which match the search parameter on the Cross-reference screen, so that the correct record can be selected. More than one word can be specified for the search by separating the words by a space. For example,

\commodities=Au Ag

will cause the system to find all records with both Au and Ag in the **Commodities** field.

### The Cross-Reference Screen

If more than one record in the database meets the criteria specified in the cross-reference search parameter, the system will display a Cross-reference screen to allow the user to select the desired record or to further refine the search. The Cross-reference screen lists one line of information for each record which meets the criteria. At this point, the user has the choice of selecting one of the records on the list to edit, paging further through the list if it is continued on further pages, refining or changing the search, or returning to the data entry screen without making a selection. The Cross-reference screen can also be reached by entering a \ without a search word. This technique is useful if the user needs to use one of the search options other than searching for whole words. The following options are available from the Cross-reference screen:

<u>Entry</u>	<u>Action</u>
RETURN	Pressing the <b>RETURN</b> key (NEW-LINE on screen option list) returns to the data entry screen without selecting a record
#	Entering a number from the selection list returns to the data entry screen and displays the selected record
PG#	Entering <b>PG</b> followed by a page number displays another page of the selection list. There is no space between the command, PG, and the page number
new word	If a new word is entered, the system searches for the new word in the current cross-reference field(s). This is not a subset function; the entire database is searched for the new word. If the item being searched for is a number (such as a reference number), entering a new number at this prompt will cause the system to try to select that number record from the selection list (see #, above). To force the system to accept the number as a new search parameter, enter <b>key=n</b> , where n is the desired number

- R Refine the search. The system prompts for a new word and searches for the new word within the previously selected set of records. This is a true subset function
- S Sub-string search. The system will search for any cross-referenced word which contains the specified sub-string and display a list of records which contain the word
- (.) Continue the sub-string search. Entering a period after a sub-string search list is displayed will continue the search to the next cross-referenced word which contains the specified sub-string and display a list of records which contain the word

As an example of the use of sub-string searching, suppose the user wants to find a record with a site name of "Cotopaxi Mine", but is not sure of the correct spelling. From the Cross-reference screen, the user can enter an **S** and then when the system prompts for the search string, enter **cot**. The system will search the index file for the first index word which contains the string **cot**. If the first index word it finds is "scotch", it will list all of the records which have the word "scotch" in the **Site Name** or **Synonyms** fields. The user can then enter a period and the system will search for the next index word which contains the string **cot** and display a list of those records. The user continues to enter a period at each list until the list of records with "Cotopaxi" in their name appears.

### Building Cross-Reference Indexes

Normally, cross-reference indexes are built and maintained automatically by GSMODS. Each time a record is entered into the system, GSMODS adds the record to each of the appropriate indexes. If a record is deleted from the data entry screen or if the record is modified so that cross-reference fields are changed, the system will update the appropriate indexes so that cross-referencing will select the correct record(s). There are, however, several ways in which the cross-reference indexes can become corrupted relative to the databases. If data records are modified or deleted from Revelation Command Level (TCL), the cross-reference indexes will not be updated. If information is added to a database by any method other than entry from a GSMODS entry screen, the indexes will not be updated. Finally, if this version is being installed as an update to a previous version of GSMODS, data records which were entered prior to the update will not be indexed.

To re-build a cross-reference index which is incorrect for any reason, select choice number 5 from the Utilities Menu (the Utilities Menu is accessed by selecting choice number 9 from the Main Menu). This will start the cross-reference building program. The program will list the databases which can be cross-referenced in GSMODS and prompt for a selection. If one or more

database indexes are known to be incorrect, but not all of them, select one of the databases to re-build from the list. The program will then delete the current cross-reference index list for the selected database and re-build it from the data records. The process can be quite time-consuming if there are many records in the database. The program keeps a running list on the screen of its progress. When it finishes with the first database, it will prompt for another selection. Continue until all the known incorrect database indexes have been re-built. Return to the Utilities Menu by entering a **q** or **Q** at the database selection prompt.

To re-build all of the database indexes, press the **RETURN** key at the database selection prompt. The program will cycle through all of the databases on the list and then return to the Utilities Menu.

### Record Counters

Several databases within the GSMODS system automatically provide a default record number for the next record to be added to the database (the Locality database, the Reference database, and the User-defined Symbol database). Occasionally, the default sequence number is not the number of the next available empty record. The numbers can become different either by the user creating a record and not entering any data into it, or by the user deleting one or more of the most recent records from the system (see p. 52). No difficulty is caused to the system by having unused record numbers; extra storage space is not consumed and extra time is not required to search or sort the database. However, the default record number can be easily reset to any value. To increase the default record number, intentionally leaving unused record numbers, enter the desired number in the record key field and proceed with the entry of the rest of the information for that record. To decrease the default record number, enter an **=** followed by the desired number in the record key field. For example, entering

**=100**

in the **Record No.** field of the Locality database will reset the default record number to 100. A space is not allowed between the **=** and the number.

### Special Characters and Terms

There are a number of characters and terms which have special meanings within Revelation and/or within GSMODS. The following table contains a list of the special functions which are useful for modifying data within the system as well as a description of what they do and where they are used. For a more complete list of special functions, see Chapter 8, Quick Reference.

## Control Keys:

<u>Key</u>	<u>Active</u> <sup>1</sup>	<u>Description</u>
left <sup>2</sup>	All	Move cursor left one character
right <sup>2</sup>	All	Move cursor right one character
^left <sup>2</sup>	All	Move cursor left one word
^right <sup>2</sup>	All	Move cursor right one word
up <sup>2</sup>	Entry	Move cursor to previous field
down <sup>2</sup>	Entry	Move cursor to next field (same as RETURN)
Home	All	Move cursor to beginning of line
End	All	Move cursor to end of line
Ins	All	Toggle between insert and replace modes
Del	All	Delete character at current cursor position
backsp <sup>2</sup>	All	Delete character to the left of current cursor position

## Function Keys:

<u>Key</u>	<u>Active</u>	<u>Description</u>
F1	Entry	Display HELP screen for current field
F7	All	Clear from cursor to beginning of line
F8	All	Clear from cursor to end of line

## Special Characters:

<u>Char.</u>	<u>Active</u>	<u>Description</u>
>	GS-Entry	Go to top of next screen of entry set
<	GS-Entry	Go to top of first screen of entry set
!	GS-Entry	File record
-	GS-Entry	Stop copying defaults from previous record to current field
\	Key	Denotes beginning of cross-reference search parameter
=	Key	Reset default record number



Special Terms for use with Which Value? prompt:

<u>Term</u>	<u>Alternate</u>	<u>Description</u>
B	PgUp	Display previous multi-valued window
F	PgDn	Display next multi-valued window
ADD	^A	Add values to end of multi-valued list
CLEAR	^C	Delete all values from multi-valued window
Dn	^D	Delete value no. n from multi-valued window
In	^I	Insert new value before value no. n in multi-valued list

### <sup>1</sup>Notes:

All	Usable at any prompt
Entry	Usable at any prompt on any entry screen unless otherwise marked
GS-Entry	Usable at any prompt on GSMODS entry screens only
Key	Usable at record key prompt only

### <sup>2</sup>Keys

- Left, right, up, down, and backspace are commonly represented by arrows on the computer keyboard
- ^ Hold down control key while pressing the next key

## Copying and Deleting Records

There are two Revelation commands, COPY and DELETE, which are useful for making changes to GSMODS databases. Revelation commands are used from Revelation Command Level (TCL). To get to TCL from the GSMODS system, first return to the Main Menu. Pressing the F9 function key from the Main Menu will place the system at Command level. The Revelation TCL prompt is a colon. Any Revelation command can be entered from the colon prompt (see Appendix IV, Revelation Command Summaries). Cross-reference indexes will not be correct if database records are changed with Revelation commands such as COPY or DELETE. See Building cross-reference indexes, p. 48, for instructions on how to re-build the indexes.

### The COPY Command

The COPY command is used to duplicate a record within a database. It is entered from the Revelation Command Level colon prompt. The COPY command consists of the word COPY followed by the name of the database containing the record to copy, followed by the key of the record to copy, followed by the word TO:,

followed by the key to use for the new copy of the record. Each item or word in the command line must be separated from the previous item by a space. For example, the following command:

**;COPY MD.PLOT quad1 TO: quad2**

will duplicate the record with a key of quad1 in the Plot Parameter database and give the new record a key of quad2. After this command, there will be two identical records in the Plot Parameter database with keys of quad1 and quad2. This technique is useful for making a series of plot parameter records or report parameter records which only differ in a small number of fields. For example, if a series of plots is desired from a number of adjacent quadrangles using the same parameters for each plot, a series of plot parameter records could be created by entering all of the information for each plot from the keyboard at the Plot Parameter entry screen. The procedure could be improved by using the GSMODS default system so that the contents of each field in records after the first would not need to be re-typed; however, the user would still have to press the **RETURN** key for each field of each record. A faster method would be to create the first record on the data entry screen and then use the COPY command to make as many copies as desired. The user can then go back to the data entry screen and make the required changes to each new record, perhaps only changing the latitude and/or longitude limits and the notes for each record.

### The DELETE Command

The DELETE command is used to erase records completely from the system. To delete a record, enter the word DELETE followed by the system name of the database which contains the record, followed by the key(s) of the record(s) to delete. Each item or word in the command line must be separated from the next item by a space. For example, the command:

**;DELETE MD.DATA 25**

will erase record number 25 from the Locality database.

CAUTION - Be sure that you want to permanently eliminate the record before deleting it; there is no un-delete facility in the Revelation system.

To delete more than one record in the same database, list all of the record keys on the same command line separated by spaces. The command:

**;DELETE MD.PLOT quad1 quad2 quad3 quad4**

will erase four records from the Plot Parameter database. The DELETE command is most useful for erasing area outline records which have been incorrectly digitized. There is no entry screen for the Area Outline database (MD.AREA); information is entered

directly from the digitizing program. There are facilities in the digitizing program to correct errors, but at times it is easier to delete a record and start over. The records in the Area Outline database have the same key (**Record No.**) as the corresponding record in the Locality database. For more information about the DELETE command, refer to the Revelation User's Guide.

### Changing Location Information

There are several methods of making changes to information which is entered from the digitizer. Individual records can be deleted from the Area Outline database (the drastic solution, see DELETE command, above). Single site locations can be corrected by re-digitizing the record. The new information will overwrite any older information in the Locality database. If a record number is entered while running the digitizing program and then the **D** (Delete) key on the digitizer keypad is pressed, the most recently entered line or area outline for that record will be deleted. To delete all of the lines or areas from a record, continue to enter the record number and the **D** key until the system informs you that there is no more data for that record. This allows you to re-digitize area outline information if an error has been made. See Chapter 4 for more information on running the digitizing program.

### Modifying Locations in the Area Outline Database

**CAUTION** - The following technique is intended for experienced Revelation users only! Proceed at your own risk.

The Area Outline database is not intended to be accessed directly by the user; there is no data entry screen for MD.AREA. Access should be limited to the facilities provided in the digitizing system and to deleting records from Revelation Command Level. However, if the user is familiar with either of the Revelation editors, EDIT or TEXT, minor changes can be made directly to records in the Area Outline database. Each record contains three fields, the record key (which is identical to the record key for the corresponding Locality database record), a multi-valued **Latitude** field, and a multi-valued **Longitude** field. Latitudes and longitudes are stored in decimal degrees. Each value in the **Latitude** field is paired with the same value number in the **Longitude** field to create a location pair. Do not add or delete a value from one field without also adding or deleting the corresponding value in the other field. Multiple lines in the same record are separated by a location with a latitude of 100° and a longitude of 0° which serves as a flag to the plotting program to mark the end of each line.

## Chapter 6. GETTING INFORMATION OUT

### 6. GETTING INFORMATION OUT

Selection criteria (Searching and Sorting)	55
The WITH clause	55
The BY clause	56
Creating GSMODS reports	56
Entering report parameters	56
key  syntax	57
Page repeating	57
Line formatting	58
Separators	58
The Report Parameter entry screens	59
Report Parameter screen 1	59
Report Parameter screen 2	61
Report Parameter screen 3	63
Report example	65
The report program	67
Creating Terminal Command Level (TCL) reports	67
The LIST command	68
The FORM command	70
The SELECT command	76
The PDISK command	76
Creating maps and overlays	77
The Plot Parameter entry screen	77
Plot symbols	80
Plot labels	80
Plot lines	81
The plot program	81
Combining GSMODS with GSMAP and GSDRAW	82
User-defined symbols	86
Example	86
Sub-polygons	89

## Chapter 6. GETTING INFORMATION OUT

### Selection Criteria (Searching and Sorting)

The concept of selecting a certain records from a database and sorting them into a user-defined order before they are displayed or printed is used with most methods of getting information out of the GSMODS system. Several Revelation commands and the GSMODS reporting and plotting systems use selection criteria for searching and sorting. The general syntax of selection criteria will be discussed in this section, details which are specific to each command or field will be discussed in the appropriate section.

In general, selection criteria consist of WITH clauses and/or BY clauses. Any number of either type of clause may be included.

#### The WITH Clause

A WITH clause is used to select records to be printed or displayed. WITH clause syntax is:

WITH fieldname operator value

Each clause must begin with the word WITH and must contain one of the following operators:

EQ	Equal
NE	Not equal
GT	Greater than
GE	Greater than or equal
LT	Less than
LE	Less than or equal
NOT	Not (precedes other operators as a modifier)
CONTAINS	Selects record if string <u>contains</u> value as a sub-string
[]	Same as CONTAINS
]	Selects record if string <u>begins with</u> value
[	Selects record if string <u>ends with</u> value

Fieldname is the name of one of the fields in the database being searched (see Appendices V through XII for complete lists of field names), and value is what the field is being compared with. If the value is not a number, it must be enclosed in single or double quotation marks. Field names and operators must be entered in uppercase. Clauses must be separated by the word AND or the word OR. For example, the following are all valid WITH clauses which could be used with the Locality database:

```
WITH COUNTY EQ 'Pueblo'
WITH RECORD LT 10
WITH REC.TYPE EQ "SM" AND WITH COUNTY EQ "Hillside"
WITH REC.TYPE [ 'M'
```

Selection is case sensitive; the first example above will only find records with Pueblo in the COUNTY field. Records with pueblo or PUEBLO in the COUNTY field would not be selected.

### The BY Clause

The BY clause is used to sort the records before they are printed or displayed. The syntax of the BY clause is:

BY fieldname  
BY-DSND fieldname

where fieldname is a valid name of one of the fields of the database being searched (see Appendices V through XII for complete lists of field names). Field names must be entered in uppercase. The default sort is in ascending ASCII order. If a descending order sort is desired, BY-DSND can be substituted for BY. If more than one BY clause is included in the selection criteria, the first BY clause becomes the major sort definition. Each succeeding BY clause defines a successively more minor sort.

## Creating GSMODS Reports

The GSMODS system provides considerable flexibility in the final appearance of tabular reports. This flexibility requires the user to make many choices for each type of report that is to be produced. To avoid the tedium of having to answer the same questions repeatedly each time another version or another copy of the same report is to be produced, the choices are all entered into a data entry screen. Each set of selections is named and saved so that the report can be reproduced at any time by re-running the report program. In addition, similar reports can be easily generated by copying the selections from one report parameter record to another and then making whatever changes are necessary. Selection number 7 on the Main Menu brings up the first screen of the Report Parameter entry system (figure 11). The report generating program is run by entering selection 8 at the Main Menu.

### Entering Report Parameters

There are several concepts which are used throughout the Report Parameter entry screen to allow maximum flexibility in the choice of style or type of report to be generated. These general concepts will be discussed before getting into the descriptions of fields within the Report Parameter entry system.

**|key| Syntax**

There are several special character strings which can be included in any major or minor title, header, or footer description. These special strings are used to insert data from the system, data from the data file, or to insert long strings of identical characters (such as spaces or periods). All of these options are set off from the regular text by vertical bars, using the **|** character. The vertical bars and the included special character string are replaced by the information specified under each description below.

<b> fieldname </b>	Replaced by the contents of the specified field from the current record. If <b> fieldname </b> occurs in the major section title, header, or footer, the current record is the record selected by the <b>Major Title/Header Sel Criteria</b> field or the <b>Major Footer Selection Criteria</b> field. If <b> fieldname </b> occurs in the minor section title, header, or footer, the current record is the current data record. Fieldname must be a defined dictionary field name in the Locality database (MD.DATA), and must be in uppercase letters.
<b> +fieldname </b>	Similar to <b> fieldname </b> except that the entire contents of the selected field is converted to uppercase.
<b> @fieldname </b>	Similar to <b> fieldname </b> except that fieldname must be a symbolic field defined in the dictionary of MD.DATA. See the Revelation Documentation for a description of symbolic fields (symbolic fields are not available to users of Run-Time versions of Revelation).
<b>Note:</b>	<b> +fieldname </b> and <b> @fieldname </b> can be combined as long as the <b>+</b> precedes the <b>@</b> . <b> +@fieldname </b> is acceptable, <b> @+fieldname </b> is not.
<b> PN </b>	Replaced by the current page number.
<b> DT </b>	Replaced by the current system date in a mm/dd/yy format.
<b> Rn,x </b>	Replaced by the character <b>x</b> repeated <b>n</b> times.

Example: **|R20, |** (would be replaced by 20 spaces)

**Page Repeating**

Repeat fields are used to determine on which pages to print each line of the titles, headers, and footers of the report. Entry of an **A** or **a** in these fields causes the line to be printed on all pages of the report. Entry of an **F** or **f** in these fields causes the line to be printed on the first page of the report only. Entry of an **L** or **l** causes the line to be printed on the last page of the report only. If these fields are left blank, the line will be printed on all pages of the report.

## Line Formatting

Format fields are used to format individual lines or groups of lines of the report. If these fields are left blank, the line or lines will be left-justified in column 1.

Formatting Options are:

C	Center the line or lines on the output page
Ln	Left-justify the line or lines starting in column <b>n</b>
Rn	Right-justify the line or lines <b>n</b> columns from the right edge of the output page
ALn	Alternately justify the line or lines <b>n</b> columns from the left on odd numbered pages and <b>n</b> columns from the right on even numbered pages
ARn	Alternately justify the line or lines <b>n</b> columns from the right on odd numbered pages and <b>n</b> columns from the left on even numbered pages
Wn,m,i	Word-wrap the line or lines between columns <b>n</b> and <b>m</b> . Line breaks only occur at spaces between words. It is possible to concatenate values from multi-valued fields such that no spaces are included. The system sees the result as a single word. If a word is longer than the space allotted for a word-wrap column, the system will break the word at the right edge of the column. <b>i</b> specifies the number of spaces to indent the first line. <b>i</b> may be positive or negative. A positive <b>i</b> generates a normal paragraph indent. A negative <b>i</b> with an equal, but positive <b>n</b> generates a hanging indent paragraph (see Description column, figure 17, for an example with hanging indent paragraphs).

Examples: L5  
 AR  
 W5,80,-5  
 (Creates an 80 character per line paragraph with a 5 character hanging indent)

## Separators

Separator fields contain a string which is used to control what is output after each report item. For example, the **Title Separator** controls what is output after the title and before the next portion of the report. Each character of the string is used to create a single output line. Each output line is the full width of the report output (see **Char. per Line** field). Each string character is repeated for an entire line. Thus, a string which consists of a single hyphen (-) will give a single line separator which consists of an entire line of - characters. Any character may be repeated for the entire line except a **B** or **b**. **B** and **b** are special characters which are used to generate a blank line. If this field is left blank, the system will output the next portion of the report on the line immediately following the



last line of the current item.

Examples:   b       (single blank line)  
          b\_b     (blank line, solid line [underscore], blank  
                  line)  
          \*       (single line of '\*'s)

## The Report Parameter Entry Screens

There are three data entry screens for Report Parameters (see figures 11, 13, and 15). Figures 12, 14, and 16 show completed Report Parameter entry screens which were used to produce a sample report (figure 17). Instructions for entering data into other system entry screens also apply to the report system (see Chapters 3 and 4). The special characters -, >, <, and ! all have the same meanings as in the Locality entry system. Help screens are available for each field by entering a ? or by pressing the **F1** function key.

### Report Parameter Screen #1

The first field on the first screen of the Report Parameter entry system is the **Report Name** field (figure 11). Entering an existing name displays the existing parameter information which can then be modified and stored again. Entering a new name creates a new Report Parameter record. The next field, **Comments**, is generally used for a more detailed description of the report being defined. This field has no effect on the creation of the report, but is useful for documenting the type of report and its use. The next seven fields on screen 1 of the Report Parameter entry system control the overall aspect of the report. Entering a number in the **Max. Records** field limits the output to the number of records given. This is useful for testing purposes. Once the report definition is satisfactory, clear this field so that the system will process all of the records in the Locality database. The **Page Break w/i Record** field controls whether the system will split a record between consecutive pages or force each record to be complete on a page. The **Output Device** field controls the destination of the completed report and the **Char. per Line** and **Line per Page** fields control the size of the output page. The **Printer Init** and **Printer Reset** fields are used to setup and reset the printer so that the appropriate font or type size is used for the report.

Most of the rest of the fields on the Report Parameter entry screens are used to enter various titles, head notes, and footers which are to appear on the report. Each entity (title, head note, etc.) has a field which describes the contents of the entity, a field which controls where it is repeated on the report, a field which controls the formatting of the entity, and a field which defines the separator which is to follow the entity in the report. The entities which are defined on the first screen can be repeated on each page of the report. The first of

GSMODS - Report Parameter		Screen 1 of 3
1 Report Name: _____		
2 Comments:	_____	
3 Max. Records: _____	4 Page Break w/i Record: _____	
5 Output Device: _____	6 Char. per Line: _____	7 Line per Page: _____
8 Printer Init: _____	9 Printer Reset: _____	
10 Title Of Report: _____		
01> _____		
11 Title Repeat: _____	12 Title Format: _____	13 Title Sep: _____
14 Head Note: _____		
15 Head Repeat: _____	16 Head Format: _____	17 Head Sep: _____
18 Page Footer: _____		
01> _____		
19 Foot Repeat: _____	20 Foot Format: _____	
21 Column Header: _____		
01> _____		
22 Col. Head Rep: _____	23 Col. Head Sep: _____	
24 Selection Criteria: _____		
25 Major Sort Field: _____		

Figure 11. GSMODS Report Parameter entry screen 1 of 3.

GSMODS - Report Parameter		Screen 1 of 3
1 Report Name: Sample		
2 Comments:	Sample report for documentation	
3 Max. Records: 10	4 Page Break w/i Record: N	
5 Output Device: P	6 Char. per Line: 119	7 Line per Page: 87
8 Printer Init: 15,27,65,9,27,50	9 Printer Reset: 18,27,65,12,27,50	
10 Title Of Report: _____		
01> Mines and Prospects, Butte 1° x 2° quadrangle, Montana		
11 Title Repeat: F	12 Title Format: C	13 Title Sep: b
14 Head Note: _____		
[Note: Sites are plotted by site numbers on plates 1 and 2. Commodities		
15 Head Repeat: F	16 Head Format: W1,119	17 Head Sep: _b
18 Page Footer: _____		
01>  PN		
19 Foot Repeat: _____	20 Foot Format: C	
21 Column Header: _____		
01> Site Site Name R8,  Latitude/ Commodities R25,  Description R23,		
22 Col. Head Rep: F	23 Col. Head Sep: _b	
24 Selection Criteria: WITH STATE = 'MT'		
25 Major Sort Field: DISTRICT		

Figure 12. GSMODS Report Parameter entry screen 1 of 3 for sample report (figure 17).

these sets of linked multi-valued fields defines the title of the report. Each entry in the **Title of Report** field defines one line of the report title. As many lines of report title as desired may be entered. For each line entered, the system will prompt for which pages to print the title line on (**Title Repeat** field) and how to format the title line (**Title Format** field). When the report title is completed by leaving the **Title of Report** field blank, the system will prompt for the separator to use between the end of the title and the remainder of the report (**Title Sep** field). The system then prompts for similar information for the Head Note, Page Footer, and Column Header. The head note is slightly different from the title in that it is not a multi-valued field. The entire head note is entered into the **Head Note** field at one time and the system formats it into a paragraph based on the contents of the **Head Format** field. The page footer section consists of linked multi-valued fields like the report title. The column header also consists of linked multi-valued fields, but does not include a format field. Each line of the column header should be formatted exactly as it should appear on the final report as it is entered into the **Column Header** field.

The last two fields on the first screen of the Report Parameter entry system are used to select and sort the records which are to be used to create the report. The **Selection Criteria** field selects the records to be used for the report. All of the options discussed in the section on Selection Criteria, p. 55, can be used in this field. However, use of a BY clause in this field is redundant and will only slow the processing of the report. Leaving this field blank will select all records in the Locality database.

The report can be divided into sections such as mining districts or counties. These sections are called "Major Sections" in this documentation to distinguish them from the individual records which are called "Minor Sections". In order to divide the data records into major sections, the selected records must be sorted by the field which is used to distinguish the major sections. The name of the field used to sort the Locality database records into major sections is entered into the **Major Sort Field**. After the sort field has been entered, the first screen Change prompt will appear. At this point, modifications can be made to the first screen, the record can be filed or deleted, or the user can proceed to the second screen by pressing the **RETURN** key.

## Report Parameter Screen #2

When the second screen of the Report Parameter entry system appears, the report name from the first screen is automatically displayed as a reminder (figure 13). The next eleven fields on the second screen are used to define the title, header, and footer to be used for each major section of the report. These fields are similar to the equivalent fields from the first screen. There are no Repeat fields on this screen. The **Major**

GSMODS - Report Parameter		Screen 2 of 3	
		Report Name: _____	
2	Major Section Title:	_____	
3	Major Title Format: _____	4	Major Title Sep: _____
5	Major Section Header:	_____	
	01> _____		
6	Major Header Format: _____	7	Major Header Sep: _____
8	Major Title/Header Sel Criteria: _____		
9	Major Section Footer:	_____	
	01> _____		
10	Major Footer Selection Criteria: _____		
11	Major Footer Format: _____	12	Major Footer Sep: _____
13	Minor Sort Field: _____		
14	Minor Title:	_____	
	01> _____		
15	Minor Title Format: _____	16	Minor Title Sep: _____
17	Minor Header:	_____	
	01> _____		
18	Minor Header Format: _____	19	Minor Header Sep: _____

Figure 13. GSMODS Report Parameter entry screen 2 of 3.

GSMODS - Report Parameter		Screen 2 of 3	
		Report Name: Sample	
2	Major Section Title:	SITE	
3	Major Title Format: C	4	Major Title Sep: _B
5	Major Section Header:	01>  DESCRIPTION	
6	Major Header Format: W1,119,5	7	Major Header Sep: _B
8	Major Title/Header Sel Criteria: WITH REC.TYPE CONTAINS "A"		
9	Major Section Footer:	_____	
10	Major Footer Selection Criteria:	_____	
11	Major Footer Format:	12	Major Footer Sep: _B
13	Minor Sort Field: SITE		
14	Minor Title:	_____	
15	Minor Title Format:	16	Minor Title Sep:
17	Minor Header:	_____	
18	Minor Header Format:	19	Minor Header Sep:

Figure 14. GSMODS Report Parameter entry screen 2 of 3 for sample report (figure 17).

**Section Title** and **Major Section Header** are repeated at the beginning of each major section of the report and the **Major Section Footer** is repeated at the end of each major section of the report. There are two fields which are used to enter selection criteria, **Major Title/Header Sel Criteria** and **Major Footer Selection Criteria**. These two fields are only used if the `|fieldname|` syntax (see `|key|` syntax, p. 57) is used with the major section title, header, or footer. If the `|fieldname|` syntax is used, the selection criteria fields are used to determine which record in each major section is to be used to extract the information which is to go into the title, header, or footer.

The next field on the second screen, **Minor Sort Field**, is used to define the sequence of records within each major section. Typically, records will be sorted by record number or site name, but any field in the Locality database may be used as a sort field. The rest of the fields on screen 2 are used to define the title and header to be used with each minor section (individual record). The **Minor Title** and **Minor Header** are repeated before each data record throughout the report. After the minor header separator field has been entered, the second screen Change prompt will appear. At this point, modifications can be made to the second screen, the record can be filed or deleted, the user can return to the first screen, or the user can proceed to the third screen by pressing the **RETURN** key.

### Report Parameter Screen #3

When the third screen of the Report Parameter entry system appears, the report name from the first screen is automatically displayed as a reminder (figure 15). The next five fields form a linked multi-valued field set which are used to define the output of information from the individual data records. The **Column Fieldnames** field is used to list the fields from the data record which are to be used to create each column of the report. Normally, only one field name is used for each output column. However, fields can be combined in one column (LATITUDE and LONGITUDE, for example). For more information on combining fields in one column, see the description of **Column Fieldnames** in Appendix X or see the help screen at the **Column Fieldnames** prompt. The **Start Char. No** and **Column Width** fields are used to position each output column on the page and the **Column Format** field is used to format each column individually. The **Multi-value Sel** field is only used if the field being output is a multi-valued field. It is used to determine which values to output from the field and how to combine the values within the output column. These fields are followed by the linked multi-valued fields which are used to define the footer which follows each data record on the report.

The final field, **Print District Records**, is used to determine whether summary (district or area) records (those with an **A** in the REC.TYPE field) are output as individual records.

GSMODS - Report Parameter		Screen 3 of 3	
		Report Name: _____	
2	Column Fieldnames: 01> _____		
3	Start Char. No: _____	4	Column Width: _____
5	Column Format: _____	6	Multi-value Sel: _____
7	Record Sep: _____		
8	Minor Footer: 01> _____		
9	Minor Footer Format: _____	10	Minor Footer Sep: _____
11	Print District Records: ____		

Figure 15. GSMODS Report Parameter entry screen 3 of 3.

GSMODS - Report Parameter		Screen 3 of 3	
		Report Name: Sample	
2	Column Fieldnames: 01> RECORD		
3	Start Char. No: 1	4	Column Width: 2
5	Column Format: R	6	Multi-value Sel:
7	Record Sep: B		
8	Minor Footer:		
9	Minor Footer Format:	10	Minor Footer Sep:
11	Print District Records: N		

Figure 16. GSMODS Report Parameter entry screen 3 of 3 for sample report (figure 17).

Often, these records are used (as shown in the example discussed below) to provide the information for the major section title or header. Repeating the information as an individual record may not be desirable.

### Report Example

As an example of one type of report which can be created with the reporting system, figure 17 shows a page from a table which lists several features of mines and prospects in the Butte 1° by 2° quadrangle, Montana. Data for this example are from a list of all the mines and prospects in the quadrangle by Elliott and others (1986). Figures 12, 14, and 16 show the Report Parameters which were used to create the sample report. Where multi-valued fields are used for the sample report parameters, only as many values as can be shown on the screen at one time are shown in the figures. For example, **Column Fieldnames** contains six values to produce the sample report (1 for each column) even though only the first value is shown on figure 16. There are many other styles of report which can be created using the reporting system and a little imagination.

## Mines and prospects, Butte 1° x 2° quadrangle, Montana

[Note: Sites are plotted by site numbers on plates 1 and 2. Commodities present are listed in approximate decreasing order of importance. Codes for commodities present, host rock(s), and associated igneous rocks and explained sources of data are listed following this table. References cited in district and area descriptions and numerical codes for sources of data are listed in Sources of Data at end of table]

Site No.	Site Name (Alternate names)	Latitude/ Longitude	Commodities Present	Description	Sources of Data
Clinton District					
The Wallace Creek granodiorite stock of Cretaceous age intrudes Cambrian and Middle Proterozoic age sedimentary rocks that have been thrust faulted and cut by northwest-trending normal faults. Veins occupy shear zones in sedimentary rocks and in granodiorite near the granodiorite contact. The district was a medium producer of copper, silver, lead, zinc, and gold.					
25	Adaline Mine	46 49 05 N 113 35 37 W	Pb, Ag, Cu, Au	Underground workings along veins in shear zones in shale (Csh) near granodiorite (Kgd) contact. Small producer of lead-silver ore.	91
26	Aladdin Mine	46 47 28 N 113 39 12 W	Cu, Ag, Au	Surface and underground workings in veins in granodiorite (Kgd). Small producer of copper ore.	91, 124
27	Bellevue Mine	46 47 52 N 113 38 47 W	Cu, Ag, Au	Underground workings in veins in granodiorite (Kgd). Small producer of copper, silver, and gold.	76, 91
28	Cape Nome Mine Bullion Moose	46 47 22 N 113 39 11 W	Cu, Ag, Au, Pb, Zn, Ba, As, Sb, Bi	Several layers of underground workings totaling 5,000 ft in veins in schist (Ymi) and granodiorite (Kgd). Small producer of copper, silver, and gold.	39, 62, 65, 91, 124
Copper Cliff District					
Thrust-faulted sedimentary rocks of Middle Proterozoic and Cambrian age host base and precious metals in veins and breccia zones. The district was a small producer of copper, gold, and silver.					
30	Blue Bell Mine Leonard Mine	46 48 16 N 113 27 12 W	Cu, Au, Ag, As, Sn, Sb	Vertical and inclined shafts along 10 ft-wide brecciated zone in quartzite (Ygr) and limestone (Csh). Small producer of copper ore.	39, 91, 124, 132
31	Copper Cliff Mine	46 48 32 N 113 27 14 W	Cu, Au, Ag, Sb, As, Bi, Pb, Sn, Zn	About 1500 ft of underground workings in breccia zones in quartzite (Ygr). Small producer of copper, gold, and silver.	35, 39, 91, 124

Figure 17. Sample output from REPORT program. Data from Elliott and others, 1986.



## The Report Program

Once the parameter record has been created, it is quite easy to create the report. To send the output to the printer, the printer must be attached to the computer and the System Setup database must be correctly configured for the printer in use (see Appendix II, Configuring GSMODS). Selecting choice number 8 from the Main Menu will bring up the program which generates the report. The program will display a menu of existing parameter records and prompt for a selection from the list. The selection may be made either by entering the number of the desired report from the list, or by entering the name of the parameter record directly. If an **F** or an **f** was entered into the **Output Device** field of the selected parameter record, the program will prompt for the name of the output file. Enter a standard DOS file name or path name and be sure the disk is available and has enough empty space to contain the output file. The program displays the page number and major section number that is being processed as it proceeds. Because the system must sort all of the selected records by the major sort field and the minor sort field, there are delays in the data output. This is a normal part of the procedure. When the report is finished, the system returns to the Main Menu.

Entering an **!** at any prompt during the reporting program will restart the program from the beginning. Entering a **q** or **Q** at any prompt will terminate the program and return control to the Main Menu.

## Creating Terminal Command Level (TCL) reports

At the bottom of the GSMODS Main Menu screen, there is a note that **F9** will end the menu. In order to search the database or output special types of tabular information, you must exit the GSMODS menu system. Pressing the **F9** function key from the Main Menu takes the user to Revelation Terminal Command Level (TCL). The TCL prompt is a **:**. From the **:** prompt any Revelation command may be entered. To return to the GSMODS Main Menu, enter **mods** or **MODS** at the **:** prompt. There are four commands that are of particular interest in the output of special types of tabular information: **LIST**, **FORM**, **SELECT**, and **PDISK**. These commands will be briefly explained in the following sections. More information about these and other Revelation commands can be found in the Revelation documentation if you have purchased the full system. If you have purchased the Run-time system, you will not have Revelation documentation other than what is given here and in Appendix IV, Revelation Command Summaries.

## The LIST Command

The LIST command is used to produce simple columnar listings either on the display screen or on the printer (figure 18). The syntax of the command is:

**:LIST {n} filename {selection criteria} fieldlist {options}**

**n** in the command above is an optional limit to the number of records to list. It must be an integer and is most useful for testing the LIST command with a small number of records before creating a large output listing.

Acceptable file names in the GSMODS system are:

MD.DATA	Locality information
MD.REF	Reference information
MD.USER	Reporter information
MD.PLOT	Plot parameter information
MD.SYM	User-defined symbol information
MD.REPORT	Report parameter information
MD.AREA	Location outline information
MD.SYS	System configuration information

Selection criteria consist of an optional phrase or phrases which define the search and sort operations to be performed on the data records before they are listed. They are described in the section on Selection Criteria, p. 55. Any valid selection criteria may be used with the LIST command.

Fieldlist is a list of field names to be included in the output list. These must be valid field names for the database being searched (see Appendices V through XII for complete lists of field names), and must be entered in the order in which they are to be output. Field names used in the selection criteria do not need to be output, and will not be unless they are also included in the list of field names.

There are several useful options which can be appended to the end of the LIST command. The first is the **(N)** option. Normally, when the output goes to the display the system stops at the end of each page. The **(N)** option causes the output to scroll continuously without stopping. Second is the **(P)** option. Normally, the output of a LIST command is sent to the display. The **(P)** option sends the output of the LIST command to the printer. See the section on the PDISK command (p. 76) for a technique used to send output to a disk file. The Revelation system has an unusual method of handling form feeds on the printer. At the end of each output to the printer, the paper is left near the bottom of the last page. When the next list is sent to the printer, it is preceded by a form feed to place the paper at the top of the next page. If the printer has been placed at the top of a page in the beginning, the initial form feed wastes a sheet of paper before starting to print. To avoid this paper eject at the beginning of the listing, use the **(E)**

PAGE 1 15:52:49 20 MAY 1987  
 Site Name..... County..... Commodities. Ore Minerals..

Boundary Red Mountain	Whatcom	Au	gold
		Ag	pyrite chalcopryrite pyrrhotite
Bronze Monarch	Skamania	Cu	chalcopryrite
		Au	pyrite
		Ag	
Chicago	Skamania	Cu	chalcopryrite
		Au	sphalerite
		Ag	native copper
		Zn	arsenopryrite
			pyrite
Commonwealth	Skamania	Cu	chalcopryrite
		Zn	sphalerite
		Pb	galena
			arsenopryrite
			pyrite
Cotopaxi Mine	Fremont	Cu	chalcopryrite
		Zn	sphalerite
		Pb	gahnite
			galena
			scheelite
Gargett	Whatcom	Au	sphalerite
		Ag	galena
		Cu	chalcopryrite
			pyrite
			malachite
			chalcocite
			azurite
			massicot
			pyrrhotite
Great Excelsior	Whatcom	Au	pyrite
		Ag	chalcopryrite
		Cu	arsenopryrite
			galena
			sphalerite
			tellurides
			native silver
			pyrrhotite
Hidden Treasure	Pend Oreille	Pb	sphalerite
		Zn	galena
Peerless tunnel	Custer	Cu	chalcopryrite ?
Sedalia mine	Chaffee	Cu	chalcopryrite
		Zn	chalcanthite
		Pb	sphalerite
		Ag	goslarite
		Au	gahnite

Figure 18. Sample output from LIST command.

option which suppresses page ejection. The preceding options are always enclosed in parentheses. More than one option can be included. There are two other useful options which are not enclosed in parentheses. The LIST command default is to single space the output. If double spaced output is desired, add the **DBL-SPC** option to the command. Finally, by default the system will output the record number as the first column. If the record number is not desired in the first column, then append **ID-SUPP** to the end of the command. A complete LIST command might look something like the following:

```
;LIST MD.DATA WITH COUNTY EQ 'Adams' BY SITE SITE DEP.TYPE ID-SUPP (PE)
```

The entire command must be in capital letters except for values within quotes which must be exactly as they are in the data record. Many more options for the LIST command can be found in the Revelation documentation including creation of special headers and footers and various types of totals and sub-totals.

### The FORM Command

The FORM command can be used to define simple output formats that are to be used repeatedly. The FORM command is simpler than the reporting facility that is included with GSMODS, but does not have as much flexibility and does not always work correctly with multi-valued fields. There are three pre-defined formats which have been included with GSMODS. The three formats, called REF, REFNUM, and DUMP, are stored in the FORMS database. The REF format prints a reference list in standard USGS format from the Reference database (figure 19). The REFNUM format prints the same reference list with the addition of the reference number (figs. 20 and 21). This allows the user to produce a cross-reference list of references and reference numbers that have been entered into the system. The DUMP format is used with the Locality database to produce a list of everything that is in the database for the selected records (figure 22). To create other form definitions, see the Revelation documentation on the FORM command. Normally, a SELECT command is given before each FORM command (see following section). The syntax of the FORM command is:

```
;FORM FORMS format filename
```

where FORMS is the name of the database where the formats are stored, format is one of the format names, such as REFNUM, and filename is either MD.DATA or MD.REF depending on which format is being used. Be sure the printer is turned on before running the FORM command. The following is an example of a complete FORM command:

```
;FORM FORMS REFNUM MD.REF
```

References Cited

- Ellis, C. L., Hannigan, B. J., and Thompson, J. R., 1983, Mineral investigation of Sangre de Cristo Wilderness Study Area, Alamosa, Custer, Fremont, Huerfano, and Saguache Counties, Colorado: U.S. Bureau of Mines, Open-File Report, MLA 65-83, 190 p.
- Heinrich, E. W., 1981, Precambrian tungsten and copper-zinc deposits of south-central Colorado: Colorado Geological Survey Resource Series 21, 115 p.
- Hodges, L. K., 1897, Mining in the Pacific Northwest: Seattle Post-Intelligencer, 116 p.
- Huntting, M. T., 1956, Inventory of Washington Minerals, Part II. Metallic Minerals, Vol. I., Text, Vol. II. Maps: Washington Division of Mines and Geology, Bulletin 37, 428 p.
- Landes, Henry, Thyng, W. S., Lyon D. A., and Roberts, Milnor, 1902, The metalliferous resources of Washington, except iron: Washington Geological Survey Annual Report for 1901, part 2, 123p.
- Lovering, T. S., and Goddard, E. N., 1950, Geology and ore deposits of the Front Range, Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 223, 319 p.
- Raymond, W. H., Leiggi, P. A., and Sheridan, D. M., 1980, Sapphirine in Precambrian rocks associated with stratabound sulfide deposits, Custer County, Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1513, 22 p.
- Salotti, C. A., 1965, Mineralogy and paragenesis of the Cotopaxi Cu-Zn skarn deposit: American Mineralogist, v. 50, p. 1179-1212.
- Sheridan, D. M., and Raymond, W. H., 1984, Preliminary report on the geology of the Sedalia mine area and its Proterozoic deposits of base-metal sulfides and gahnite, Chaffee County, Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 84-0800, 27 p.
- Sheridan, D. M., and Raymond, W. H., 1984, Precambrian deposits of zinc-copper-lead sulfides and zinc spinel (gahnite) in Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1550, 31 p.

Figure 19. Sample output from FORM command: Reference list sorted by author.

- 1 Ellis, C. L., Hannigan, B. J., and Thompson, J. R., 1983, Mineral investigation of Sangre de Cristo Wilderness Study Area, Alamosa, Custer, Fremont, Huerfano, and Saguache Counties, Colorado: U.S. Bureau of Mines, Open-File Report, MLA 65-83, 190 p.
- 3 Heinrich, E. W., 1981, Precambrian tungsten and copper-zinc deposits of south-central Colorado: Colorado Geological Survey Resource Series 21, 115 p.
- 11 Hodges, L. K., 1897, Mining in the Pacific Northwest: Seattle Post-Intelligencer, 116 p.
- 10 Huntting, M. T., 1956, Inventory of Washington Minerals, Part II. Metallic Minerals, Vol. I., Text, Vol. II. Maps: Washington Division of Mines and Geology, Bulletin 37, 428 p.
- 12 Landes, Henry, Thyng, W. S., Lyon D. A., and Roberts, Milnor, 1902, The metalliferous resources of Washington, except iron: Washington Geological Survey Annual Report for 1901, part 2, 123p.
- 8 Lovering, T. S., and Goddard, E. N., 1950, Geology and ore deposits of the Front Range, Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 223, 319 p.
- 4 Raymond, W. H., Leiggi, P. A., and Sheridan, D. M., 1980, Sapphirine in Precambrian rocks associated with stratabound sulfide deposits, Custer County, Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1513, 22 p.
- 9 Salotti, C. A., 1965, Mineralogy and paragenesis of the Cotopaxi Cu-Zn skarn deposit: American Mineralogist, v. 50, p. 1179-1212.
- 5 Sheridan, D. M., and Raymond, W. H., 1984, Preliminary report on the geology of the Sedalia mine area and its Proterozoic deposits of base-metal sulfides and gahnite, Chaffee County, Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 84-0800, 27 p.
- 6 Sheridan, D. M., and Raymond, W. H., 1984, Precambrian deposits of zinc-copper-lead sulfides and zinc spinel (gahnite) in Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1550, 31 p.

Figure 20. Sample output from FORM command: Reference list with reference numbers sorted by author.

- 1 Ellis, C. L., Hannigan, B. J., and Thompson, J. R., 1983, Mineral investigation of Sangre de Cristo Wilderness Study Area, Alamosa, Custer, Fremont, Huerfano, and Saguache Counties, Colorado: U.S. Bureau of Mines, Open-File Report, MLA 65-83, 190 p.
- 2 Worchester, P. G., 1919, Molybdenum deposits of Colorado; with general notes on the molybdenum industry: Colorado Geological Survey Bulletin 14, 131 p.
- 3 Heinrich, E. W., 1981, Precambrian tungsten and copper-zinc deposits of south-central Colorado: Colorado Geological Survey Resource Series 21, 115 p.
- 4 Raymond, W. H., Leiggi, P. A., and Sheridan, D. M., 1980, Sapphirine in Precambrian rocks associated with stratabound sulfide deposits, Custer County, Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1513, 22 p.
- 5 Sheridan, D. M., and Raymond, W. H., 1984, Preliminary report on the geology of the Sedalia mine area and its Proterozoic deposits of base-metal sulfides and gahnite, Chaffee County, Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 84-0800, 27 p.
- 6 Sheridan, D. M., and Raymond, W. H., 1984, Precambrian deposits of zinc-copper-lead sulfides and zinc spinel (gahnite) in Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1550, 31 p.
- 7 Van Alstine, 1974, Geology and mineral deposits of the Poncha Springs SE quadrangle, Chaffee County, Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 829, 19 p.
- 8 Lovering, T. S., and Goddard, E. N., 1950, Geology and ore deposits of the Front Range, Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 223, 319 p.
- 9 Salotti, C. A., 1965, Mineralogy and paragenesis of the Cotopaxi Cu-Zn skarn deposit: American Mineralogist, v. 50, p. 1179-1212.
- 10 Huntting, M. T., 1956, Inventory of Washington Minerals, Part II. Metallic Minerals, Vol. I., Text, Vol. II. Maps: Washington Division of Mines and Geology, Bulletin 37, 428 p.
- 11 Hodges, L. K., 1897, Mining in the Pacific Northwest: Seattle Post-Intelligencer, 116 p.

Figure 21. Sample output from FORM command: Reference list with reference numbers in reference number order.

## Listing of Data Fields for Record 1

```

Site           :Verde Creek area
Entry Date     :08/12/85
Reporter       :Richard B. Taylor, U.S. Geological Survey
Synonyms       :
Record Type    :AM
Site Type      :A
Source         :1
District       :Verde Creek area
County         :Custer
State          :CO
2° Quad        :Pueblo
Primary Quad   :Beckwith Mountain
Scale          : 24000
Latitude       : 38 7 53.11 N
Longitude      :105 35 59.17 W
Location       :
Deposit Type   :vein
Deposit Code   : 55.1
Commodities    :Ag
                Cu
Prod. Code     :Y
Production     :Known production prior to 1901; no data on amount, either
                tonnage or grade. Size of dumps suggests small production;
                area primarily known for silver.

Host Rock
  Name         :no formal name
  Lithology    :granitic gneiss
  Age          :E PROT
Mineralization
  Age          :OLIGO ?
Assoc. Igneous
  Description   :
  Age          :
Tectonic
  Setting       :Rocky Mountain Cordillera
Ore Minerals   :chalcopyrite
                galena
Non-ore
  Mineralogy   :Quartz veins contain minor barite and sulfide minerals; no
                data on alteration minerals; the host gneiss is sheared and
                chloritized, but the chlorite may not be related to the vein
                system.
Ore Controls    :Veins follow fractures and shears in Precambrian gneiss and
                adjacent Pennsylvanian-Permian rocks near the range-front
                fault separating the Sangre de Cristo Range from the Wet
                Mountain Valley graben to the east.

```

Figure 22. Sample output from FORM command using DUMP (data from R. B. Taylor, written communication, 1986).



## Deposit

Description :Quartz veins of unspecified size are chiefly in fractured Precambrian gneiss; mineralization extended into adjacent sedimentary rocks but veins there are lower in grade. Assays show silver in about half the veins sampled (grab samples, .x-61 oz Ag/ton); a few samples contained gold (.05 oz Au/ton). No information on continuity of veins; most less than a foot thick.

Comments :Mineralized area bounded by faults on west side, covered by Quaternary rocks to north and south and by Miocene valley-fill to east; mineralization perhaps related to hydrothermal system set up by the Oligocene Rita Alta stock, with permeability related to fractures near the Sangre de Cristo fault.

Notes :A few ounces of gold may(?) have been produced in 1931.

Key Words :vein

Reference Nos. : 1

References :Ellis, C. L., Hannigan, B. J., and Thompson, J. R., 1983, Mineral investigation of Sangre de Cristo Wilderness Study Area, Alamosa, Custer, Fremont, Huerfano, and Saguache Counties, Colorado: U.S. Bureau of Mines, Open-File Report, MLA 65-83, 190 p.

Figure 22 (continued).

## The SELECT Command

Because the FORM command does not provide a method of sorting or selecting the records before printing, the SELECT command must be used. If the FORM command is run as shown above, all the records in the Reference database will be printed in the order in which they are stored in the database. This is not the order in which the records were entered; nor is it record number order. Generally, this order is not of any use to the user. Therefore, the normal procedure is to run a SELECT command immediately preceding the FORM command. The syntax of the SELECT command is:

```
;SELECT filename {selection criteria}
```

where the file name is the same as the file name to be used in the FORM command, and the selection criteria are formatted as described in the Selection Criteria section, p. 55. Any valid selection criteria may be used with the SELECT command. To produce a list of references in alphabetic order by author (figure 20), the following sequence would be used:

```
;SELECT MD.REF BY AUTH.NAME  
>FORM FORMS REF MD.REF
```

When the SELECT command is finished, Revelation will prompt for the next command with a ≥ prompt. The ≥ prompt indicates that Revelation has created a selection list from the database and is waiting for a command which uses the selection list. The FORM command must immediately follow the SELECT command. To produce a list of references with reference numbers in reference number order for cross-reference use while entering data records (figure 21), the following sequence would be used:

```
;SELECT MD.REF BY REC.NO  
>FORM FORMS REFNUM MD.REF
```

## The PDISK Command

PDISK is a Revelation facility which can be used to send any report to a disk file (in ASCII format) instead of to the printer. It is a simple data re-direction command. Invoking PDISK changes the destination of all information that would normally be sent to the printer. The syntax of the PDISK command is:

```
;PDISK pathname
```

Where pathname is any path name which is acceptable to DOS. For example,

```
;PDISK A:TEMP.OUT
```

would send all subsequent printer files to a file named TEMP.OUT

on the A: disk. Redirection remains in effect until another PDISK command is issued or the user logs off the Revelation system. To re-direct printer files back to the printer, the following command is used:

**;**PDISK PRN****

### **Creating Maps and Overlays**

GSMODS includes a plotting facility for the production of mineral occurrence maps and overlays. Output from this facility is directed to a pen plotter (Hewlett-Packard or equivalent) attached to one of the computer's serial communications ports. There is currently no facility for plotting localities on the computer screen or on a printer. A variety of symbols and line types are available for plotting individual site localities and lines which have been digitized (see Chapter 4, Entering location information from the digitizer).

### **The Plot Parameter Entry Screen**

The GSMODS system provides considerable flexibility in the final appearance of the plot. This flexibility requires the user to make many choices for each plot that is to be produced. To avoid the tedium of having to answer the same questions repeatedly each time another version or another copy of the same plot is to be produced, the choices are all entered into a data entry screen. Each set of selections is named and saved so that the plot can be reproduced at any time just by re-running the plot program. In addition, similar plots can be easily generated by copying the selections from one Plot Parameter entry screen to another and then making whatever changes are necessary. Selection number 5 on the Main Menu brings up the Plot Parameter entry screen (figure 23). Figure 24 shows a completed Plot Parameter entry screen which was used to produce the sample plots described in the Plot Program section, p. 81.

**Plot Name** is the first field on the Plot Parameter entry screen. Entering an existing name displays the existing parameter information which can then be modified and stored again. Entering a new name creates a new plot parameter record. The next four fields define the boundaries of the area to be plotted. Enter latitudes in the following format: **dd mm ss N** or **dd mm ss S**, and longitudes in the following format: **ddd mm ss E** or **ddd mm ss W**. The next two fields determine the scale of the plot. The N-S and E-W scales do not need to be the same. This is helpful when trying to match a plot to a base map. Base maps, even scale-stable maps, are rarely exactly to scale in both directions. The next field determines which direction will be north on the paper. If no rotation is selected, by entering an **N**, the X-axis (east-west) will lie along the length of the paper. If the plot is rotated, by entering a **Y**, the X-axis will lie along the width of the paper.

GSMODS Plot Parameter		1 Plot Name _____	
Plot Limits:		2 N Latitude _____	4 E Longitude _____
		3 S Latitude _____	5 W Longitude _____
6 N-S Scale _____	7 E-W Scale _____	8 Rotate X & Y axes? _	
Tick Interval: 9 N-S 01> _____		10 E-W _____	11 T. Size _____
		13 X-Offset _____	14 Y-Offset _____
Symbols: 15 Code 01> _____		16 Pen # _	17 Height _____
18 Sel. Criteria _____			
Labels: 19 Post Field 01> _____			
20 Pen # _		21 Char. Height _____	22 Char. Width _____
23 Sel. Criteria _____			
Lines: 24 Line Type Code 01> _		25 Pen # _	
26 Sel. Criteria _____			
27 Notes _____			

Figure 23. GSMODS Plot Parameter entry screen.

GSMODS Plot Parameter		1 Plot Name Sample	
Plot Limits:		2 N Latitude 46 50 00 N	4 E Longitude 113 35 00 W
		3 S Latitude 46 46 00 N	5 W Longitude 113 40 00 W
6 N-S Scale 50000	7 E-W Scale 50000	8 Rotate X & Y axes? Y	
Tick Interval: 9 N-S 01> 00 01 00		10 E-W 00 01 00	11 T. Size -0.2
		13 X-Offset 2.0	14 Y-Offset 3.8
Symbols: 15 Code 01> 1		16 Pen # 1	17 Height 0.15
18 Sel. Criteria WITH COMMODITIES EQ "Cu"			
Labels: 19 Post Field 01> RECORD			
20 Pen # 1		21 Char. Height 0.12	22 Char. Width 0.08
23 Sel. Criteria			
Lines: 24 Line Type Code 01> 1		25 Pen # 2	
26 Sel. Criteria WITH STATE EQ "MT"			
27 Notes Parameters for sample plot			

Figure 24. GSMODS Plot Parameter entry screen for sample plot (figure 25).

Fields 9 through 12 determine the spacing and size of tick marks to plot. If no tick marks are desired, leave field 9 blank; the system will then skip the remaining tick mark fields. If tick marks are desired, enter the intervals desired in fields 9 and 10. Tick intervals are entered with the following format: **dd mm ss**. The intervals do not need to be the same. Tick marks will always be plotted at even intervals calculated from 0° latitude and longitude, regardless of whether the border of the map lies at an even interval. For example, if the N-S borders of the map are at 38° 15' and 39° 15', and if a N-S tick interval of 30' is specified, tick marks will be plotted at 38° 30' and 39° 00' only. Field 11 specifies the size of the tick marks in inches. If a positive number is entered (0.1 for example) tick marks will be plotted throughout the map; if a negative number is entered (-0.1 for example) tick marks will only be plotted along the borders of the map. Finally, field 12 specifies the number of the pen to be used to plot the tick marks. The pen number is the number of the pen stall on the plotter. If a 1 is entered, the pen in stall #1 on the plotter will be used. After the pen number is entered, the system will return to field 9 to ask for a second set of tick marks. As many sets of ticks marks as desired may be entered. Tick mark entry may be terminated by pressing the **RETURN** key at field 9.

The next two fields specify the amount to offset the plot on the paper in the X and Y directions. Enter the distance, in inches, that the boundary of the plot should be from the left edge (X) and bottom (Y) of the plot paper. Most plotters will not allow plotting closer than about 0.4-0.8 inches from the edge of the paper. If a number is entered that is smaller than the minimum for the plotter (or the field is left blank), the program will substitute the minimum for the plotter in use.

The remainder of the entry screen is divided into three sections, labeled **Symbols**, **Labels**, and **Lines**. Each section is used to define sets of similar items. Each section is composed of linked multi-valued fields. That is, the system will store definitions for as many symbols or labels or lines as the user would like to enter. Each time an entry is made in field 15 (**Symbol Code**), for example, the system cycles through the rest of the Symbol fields, 16-18, and back to 15. Only when field 15 is left blank will the system go on to the section on Labels. Other similarities in the three sections include a field in each section for selecting the pen number to use to plot the item being defined, and a field called **Sel. Criteria**. The **Selection Criteria** field is used to select which records from the database are to be used to create the symbol or label or line being defined. For example, if a plot is desired which displays each mine in the map area using a symbol which depends on the commodity being mined, the selection criteria for the first symbol might be:

WITH SITE.TYPE EQ "M" AND WITH COMMODITIES EQ "Pb"

The terms SITE.TYPE and COMMODITIES are field names in the Locality (MD.DATA) database. A list of all the field names in the Locality database is included in Appendix V, Locality Database. Selection criteria are described in the Selection Criteria section, p. 55. Any valid selection criteria may be entered in these fields, although entering a BY clause will only slow the plot program; it will have no effect on the final plot.

## Plot Symbols

Each entry in the Symbol section of the Plot Parameter entry screen is used to plot a single symbol at the location specified by the latitude/longitude pair in each of the selected Locality records. In addition to selection criteria and pen number, the Symbol section has fields to select the **Symbol Code** and the **Symbol Height**. To see the current list of symbols, enter a ? or press the F1 key in the **Symbol Code** field. In addition to the symbols which are included with the system, a facility has been included for User-defined symbols. If you don't like the symbols included with the system, you can design your own! The techniques for creating User-defined symbols are described in the User-Defined Symbols section (p. 86). The symbol height is entered in inches. Because a separate symbol height is entered for each symbol defined, it is possible to define an entire set of symbols which differ only in size. Also, don't overlook the possibility of combining symbols to form new symbols. If more than one symbol code or size is entered using the same selection criteria, the symbols will overprint one another.

## Plot Labels

The Labels section of the data entry screen is used to add labels to data locations that have been selected within the Symbols section. The records need not have been selected in the Symbol section, but because labels are always offset from the location of the symbol, the label alone will not represent the true location of the data record. The Labels section includes several unique fields. Field 19 (**Post Field**) selects the Locality record field from which the label information is obtained. The name of the field must be entered as it is shown on the list of field names for the Locality database (see Appendix V, Locality Database). The field name may be followed by two parameters in parentheses. For example, **KEY(2,5)**. The first parameter is only included if the field to be posted is a multi-valued field. It is used to select which value of a multi-valued field is to be posted. If the first parameter is omitted, the first value will be posted for a multi-valued field. The second parameter indicates the maximum number of characters to post for each record. All selected values will be truncated at this length. If the second parameter is omitted, the system will post up to six characters. For each record that is selected by the selection criteria field, the system will extract the appropriate number of characters from the selected value of the

**Post Field** and plot those characters to the right of the site location. For each set of Labels, the user must also specify the **Character Height** and **Character Width**, in inches.

### Plot Lines

The final section of the entry screen, the Lines section, is used to plot lines from the data set. The lines may be area outlines, map boundaries, or any other lines which have been digitized into the Area Outline database. Dummy records can be created just for the purpose of entering line data to appear on the plot. This is the technique used to plot geologic contacts, faults, etc. See the section on Digitizing, Chapter 4. The only special field in the Line section is field 24, **Line Type Code**. This code is used to specify the type of line to plot, solid, dashed, dotted, etc. Enter a ? or press the F1 key in field 24 to see the current list of acceptable codes. There is a special case for the **Selection Criteria** field of the Lines section. Entry of the keyword BOUNDARY in the **Selection Criteria** field will draw a line of the type defined in field 24 around the boundary of the map as defined by the latitude/longitude limits.

Finally, there is a text field at the bottom of the screen that can be used for notes. This field has no effect on the plot, but is a useful place to enter a description of the plot so that subsequent users will not have to puzzle out the plot definition.

As in the rest of the data entry system, there are special characters which can be entered into any field of the Plot Parameter entry screen. Entering a hyphen (-) will terminate automatic defaulting in any field. Entering an ! at any field will terminate the data entry for that parameter screen, store the record, and return with an empty screen for another plot.

### The Plot Program

Once the plot parameter record has been created, the plot is generated by running the plot program. The plotter must be attached to a serial port. The plotter configuration must be consistent with the selections in the configuration file (see Appendix III, Hardware Installation and Configuration, and Appendix II, Configuring GSMODS). Selecting choice number 6 from the Main Menu will start the plot program. The program will display a menu of the existing Plot Parameter records and prompt for a selection from the list. The selection may be made by either entering the number of the desired plot from the list, or by entering the name of the parameter record directly. The program will then ask if the plotter is turned on. Check that the plotter is on, that there are pens in the stalls that are to be used, and that the paper is loaded before responding with a **RETURN**. There will be a short delay (approximately 15 sec.) while the system checks and clears the communications line, and

then the plot will begin. The program displays the portion of the plot that is being processed as it proceeds. Because the system must search every record in the database for each selection that is included in the parameter record, there are often delays in the plotting while the program is searching and collecting information for the next series of symbols or lines. This is a normal part of the procedure. When the plot is finished, the program asks if another plot is desired. If the prompt is answered with a "Y" or "y" the list of choices is re-displayed; otherwise, the system returns to the Main Menu.

Entering an ! at any prompt during the plot program will restart the program from the beginning. Entering a q or Q at any prompt will terminate the program and return control to the Main Menu.

### Combining GSMODS with GSMAP and GSDRAW

The plotting program provides a complete system for plotting the locations of data records using a variety of symbols, for labeling those locations using information from each data record, and for plotting various types of lines which have been digitized into the database system. It does not provide facilities for adding titles, geologic symbols, text which is not associated with a data location, or explanatory information. All of these capabilities and more are available in GSMAP and GSDRAW (Selner, Taylor, and Johnson, 1986), a set of graphics programs which use the same hardware as GSMODS. Figures 25 and 26 show some of the capabilities of the combination of GSMODS and GSDRAW. Figure 25 was created by plotting information from a small test file using the set of parameters shown in figure 24. The plot demonstrates a few of the system-defined symbols, labeling of the locations with the record number, drawing a mining district outline, and drawing a latitude/longitude boundary with tick marks. Figure 26 shows the same plot with the addition of labels and title from a GSDRAW file (GSMAP could also have been used). The technique for matching the overlay to the original plot involves four steps:

1. Enter data record information into GSMODS in the normal manner. Digitize all of the information necessary for the original plot using the GSMODS digitizing facility. Create the GSMODS portion of the plot in its final form using the plot program.
2. Use the plot from GSMODS as a base for digitizing the rest of the information using either GSMAP or GSDRAW. If a small illustration (one that will fit on the digitizer in one piece) which will not contain information from other base maps is being created, GSDRAW is easier to use. If the illustration must be digitized in several pieces, or if information must be added from other base maps, GSMAP is the better choice.



3. Plot the two illustrations on the same piece of paper by running the two programs (GSMODS and either GSMAP or GSDRAW) successively without unloading the paper from the plotter.
4. Adjust the X and Y offsets in either program to match the overlay exactly to the base. As long as the paper is not unloaded from the plotter between the two plots, the registration will remain the same for every plot.

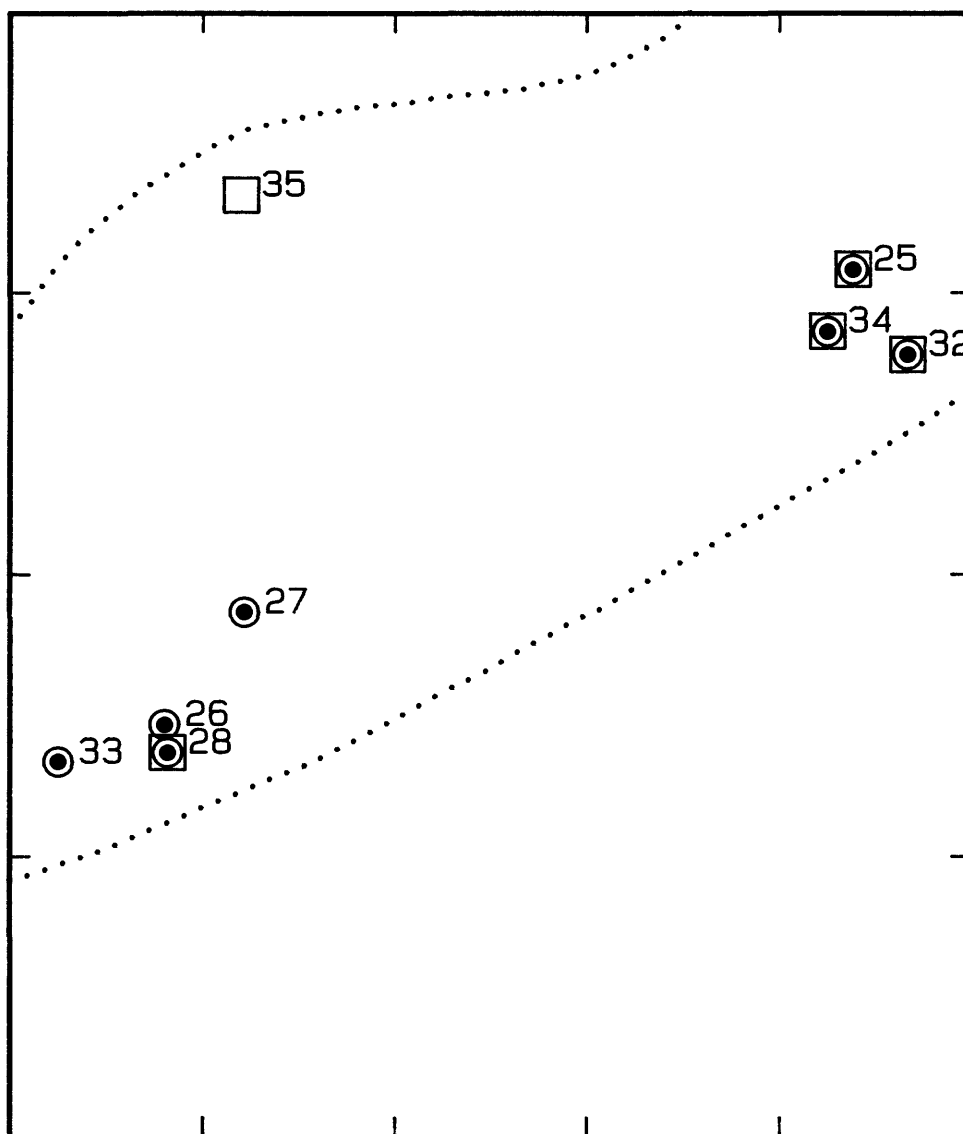
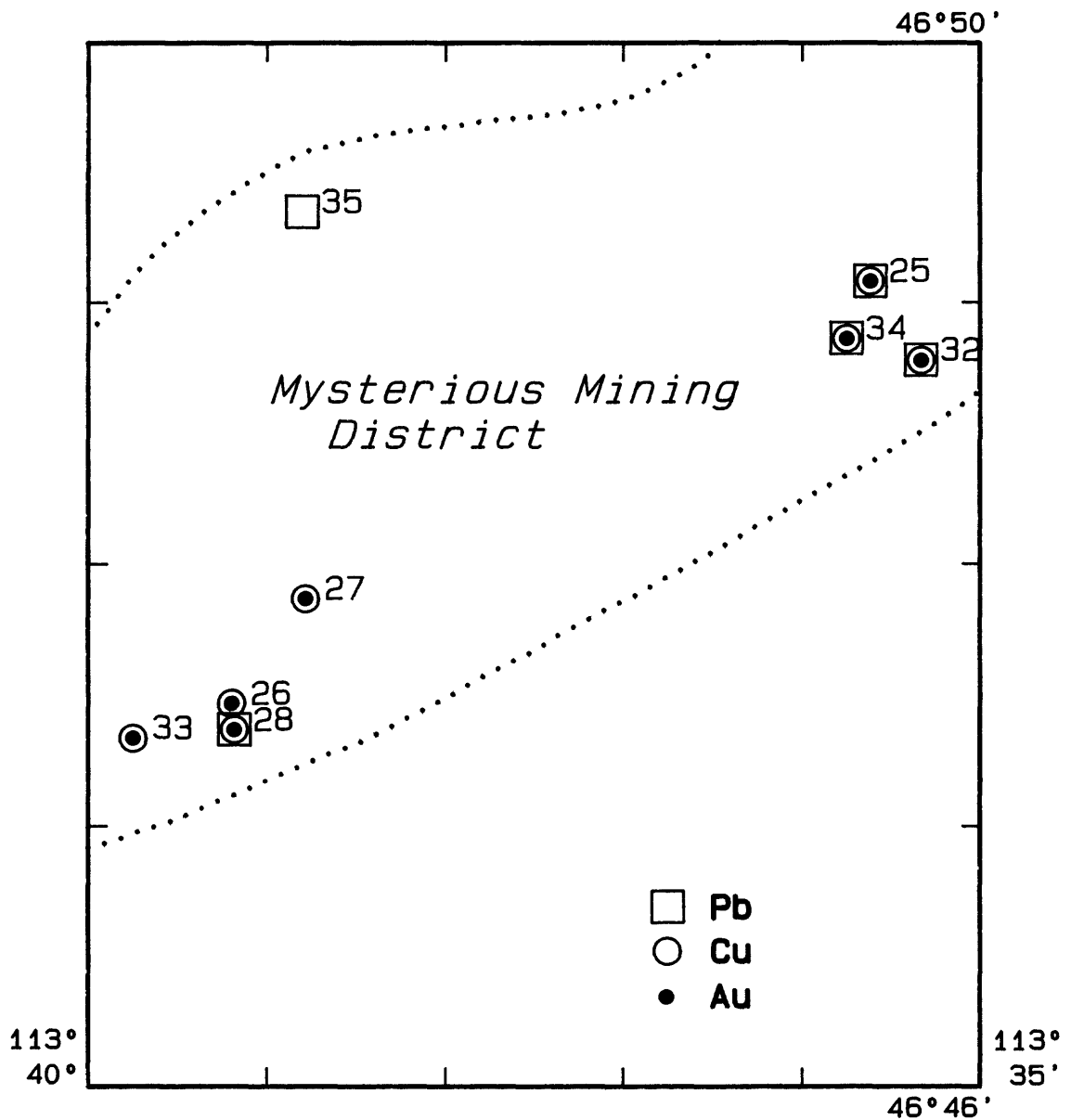


Figure 25. Sample plot drawn with GSMODS plot program.



### Major commodities produced in Mysterious Mining District

Figure 26. Sample plot drawn with GSMODS plot program and enhanced with GSDRAW (Selner, Taylor, and Johnson, 1986)

## User-Defined Symbols

To provide increased flexibility for the plotting facility within GSMODS, a system for creating user-defined symbols has been included. The user should become familiar with the plotting system using the symbols included with GSMODS before attempting to define new symbols. Also, the user should become familiar with the Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language (HPGL) before proceeding. No attempt is made here to explain the syntax and parameters of HPGL commands; the commands are fully explained in the "Interfacing and Programming Manual" which comes with the Hewlett-Packard plotter. The following HPGL commands can be used with the user-defined symbol facility:

- AR - Arc
- CI - Circle
- ER - Edge Rectangle
- EW - Edge Wedge
- PD - Pen-down
- PU - Pen-up
- PM - Polygon mode
- SP - Select Pen

A symbol definition begins by assuming that the plotter pen is at the location of the center of the symbol and that the pen is up. The general procedure is to move to the beginning of a line segment with a pen-up command and then to draw a line segment or figure with one of the other commands listed above. A pen-up command is not necessary at the end of the symbol definition. Pen-up and pen-down commands are followed by X and Y coordinates. Other commands are followed by other parameters such as circle radius, etc. All coordinates and distances are entered as a factor to be multiplied by the height of the symbol as defined in the Plot Parameter record. Therefore, all user-defined symbols can be plotted at any size.

There are two types of lines which can be used to make up each symbol, simple lines and polygonal lines. Simple lines are used to draw all parts of the symbol which are never to be filled with a solid shading. All of the HPGL commands listed above except the PM command can be used to construct simple lines. Polygonal lines are used for parts of the symbol which should be shaded if a filled symbol is selected on the Plot Parameter entry screen. The ER, EW, and SP commands are ignored within polygonal lines if a filled symbol is being drawn. If a filled symbol is not selected, then the polygonal lines portion of the symbol will be drawn as simple lines.

### Example

A brief example may be of use in understanding the concept. In order to define, or edit the definition of, a user-defined symbol, select item number 9 (Utilities) from the GSMODS Main Menu. From the Utilities Menu, select item number 2 (User-

defined Symbols) to bring up the User-defined Symbol entry screen. The screen will appear as in figure 27. The cursor will be in the **Symbol No.** field. Symbol numbers 1 through 99 are reserved for system defined symbols (No, the system does not include 99 symbols at this time; but the hope is that some of the users will send symbol definitions to the author which could be included in the next release). Symbol numbers 100 through 999 are reserved for user-defined symbols. Selecting any symbol number from 1 to 999 on the plot parameter record will plot the unfilled version of that symbol if the symbol has been defined. Adding an **F** to the beginning of any symbol number will plot the filled equivalent of the symbol. Thus, symbol number **F1** is the filled equivalent of symbol number 1, symbol number **F100** is the filled equivalent of symbol number 100, etc.

The example has been stored in symbol number 100. Enter **100** in the **Symbol No.** field and the example symbol definition will appear on the screen as in figure 28. This definition plots a circle with one quadrant filled. The **Symbol Name** field and the **Notes** field are for the user's convenience. Neither of them have any effect on the plotting of the symbol. All of the action occurs in the two fields, **Simple Lines** and **Poly. Lines**. This is where the simple lines and polygonal lines are defined for each symbol.

In this example, there is only one command in the **Simple Lines** field. This entry is used to draw the outer circle with a radius of 0.5 times the symbol height and a chord tolerance of 20 degrees. Commands are separated by semi-colons; parameters within commands are separated by commas. Because the definition of the circle is made in the **Simple Lines** field, the circle will not be filled even if a filled symbol is selected.

There are three commands in the **Poly. Lines** field. Commands are separated by semi-colons; parameters within commands are separated by commas. The first command (PD) draws a straight line from the center of the circle (circles always leave the pen where it started) to the edge (0.5 units in Y) at 0 degrees. The second command (AR) draws an arc 90 degrees clockwise along the circle; and the third command (PD) draws a straight line from the edge of the circle at 90 degrees back to the center (-0.5 units in X). The three commands taken together form a complete polygon. This is a requirement for all entries into the **Poly. Lines** field! The set of commands entered in the **Poly. Lines** field must form one or more closed polygons. If symbol number 100 is selected in a Plot Parameter record, a circle with the first quadrant outlined will be plotted. If symbol number **F100** is selected, a circle with the first quadrant filled will be plotted. Change any of the fields by entering the number of the field to change at the Change prompt. Store the symbol by pressing the **RETURN** key at the Change prompt.

GSMODS - User-defined Symbol Entry Screen	
1 Symbol No.	_____
2 Symbol Name	_____
3 Simple Lines	_____
4 Poly. Lines	_____
5 Notes	_____

Figure 27. GSMODS User-defined Symbol entry screen.

GSMODS - User-defined Symbol Entry Screen	
1 Symbol No.	100
2 Symbol Name	Circle with first quadrant filled
3 Simple Lines	CI,0.5,20
4 Poly. Lines	PD,0,0.5;AR,0,-0.5,-90.0;PD,-0.5,0
5 Notes	Plots a circle with the quadrant from 0 to 90 degrees filled

Figure 28. GSMODS User-defined Symbol entry screen with example definition.

## Sub-polygons

The PM command can be used to form sub-polygons within each of the polygons constructed in the **Poly. Lines** field. The PM command has three forms: PM,0 is used to start collecting points for a polygon, PM,1 is used to break between sub-polygons, and PM,2 is used to terminate the polygon. An initial PM,0 and a terminating PM,2 are automatically added to the commands in the **Poly. Lines** field. If one or more sub-polygons are desired, the PM,1 command must be included by the user. For example, the following command string will form a filled square with a square hole in the center:

Simple Line: PU,0.5,0.5

Poly. Line:

PD,0,-1,-1,0,0,1,1,0;PM,1;PU,-0.2,-0.2;PD,0,-0.6,-0.6,0,0,0.6,0.6,0

The simple line is used to move the pen to the edge of the polygon before the polygon definition is started. If this is not done, the plotter will draw a line from the center of the square to the beginning corner. The PM command is used to separate the definition of the exterior polygon from the interior sub-polygon. Additional sub-polygons can be constructed by separating each with the PM command. The plotter fills alternate sub-polygons starting with the exterior polygon.

As a test of your understanding of the system, define the symbols equivalent to number 100 with the other 3 quadrants filled. Then try a square or diamond with filled quadrants. When you think you've got it down, try a hexagon with filled sectors. And finally, the author would certainly appreciate it if some ambitious soul would define a "pick and hammer" prospect symbol and donate it to the system.

When you tire of the game, entering **END** in the **Symbol No.** field will return control to the Utilities Menu. Press the **F9** function key at the Utilities Menu to return to the Main Menu.

## Chapter 7. ARCHIVING AND RESTORING INFORMATION

### 7. ARCHIVING AND RESTORING INFORMATION

Creating a back-up copy of the databases	91
Restoring databases from the back-up copy	92
Transferring data between accounts	94



## Chapter 7. ARCHIVING AND RESTORING INFORMATION

Because collecting and entering data into the database system is often the most time-consuming and expensive part of a resource assessment project, every effort should be made to protect the information once it is in digital form. GSMODS includes several forms of protection which should be adequate to avoid accidental destruction of information. No attempt has been made to provide system security against intentional destruction of, or un-authorized access to, the databases. The final line of defense against accidental destruction of information consists of multiple copies of the databases. Databases should be backed up (archival copies made) regularly and often. The back-up copy (or copies if you really want to be safe) should be stored in a separate location from the primary data. Choices 3 and 4 on the Utilities Menu (Back-up Data Files and Restore Data Files) are used to make a copy of the user's databases on a separate disk from the primary databases, and to restore the primary data from the back-up copy if necessary.

### Creating a Back-up Copy of the Databases

Choice number 3 from the Utilities Menu runs the back-up program which copies the current account databases to the disk(s) selected by the user. This program deletes existing databases on the back-up disk before copying the data from the current account to the back-up disk. Be sure there are no files on the back-up disk that should be saved before starting the program. The following databases and utility files are copied from the current account to the back-up disk:

MD.DATA	MD.PLOT	MD.REF.XR
MD.REF	MD.SYM	MD.USER.XR
MD.AREA	MD.REPORT	MD.PLOT.XR
MD.USER	MD.SYS	MD.SYM.XR
FORMS	MD.DATA.XR	MD.REPORT.XR

When the back-up program is started, the screen clears and the program prompts for the location of the Revelation system. Enter the complete DOS path name to the Revelation system currently in use. This path name is used by the program to search for the files to copy. If an incorrect path name is given, the program will print an error message when it attempts to copy the files. The default for the Revelation system location is

C:\REV

indicating that the system resides on the C: drive in a sub-directory named **REV**. The program next prompts for the location of the back-up disk. Enter the complete DOS path name to the location where the back-up is to be created. The default is

A:

indicating that the **A:** drive is to be used for the back-up disk(s). If the back-up is to be made to a high-capacity device such as a removable-cartridge hard disk, a path name to a sub-directory may be entered. If a sub-directory is used, make certain there is enough unused space on the disk to complete the back-up procedure. If a complete disk is used, such as **A:**, the program will prompt for a new disk if the first disk fills.

After the locations are entered, the program will wait for the user to insert a formatted back-up disk into the selected drive and press the **RETURN** key. If no errors occur, the program will inform the user that it is deleting old back-up files (if there were any on the back-up disk) and then notify the user that it is copying databases from the current account to the back-up disk. If the back-up disk becomes full, the program will pause and request another disk in the back-up disk drive. Insert another formatted disk and press the **RETURN** key to continue. If the back-up program finds an empty database it will display a warning message. This is a normal occurrence when backing up a new account. If this message appears after the account has been in use long enough that none of the databases should be empty, quit the back-up program (enter a **Q** or **q**) and find the problem before proceeding. This is a remote possibility, but illustrates the reason for maintaining more than one back-up data set. Running the restore program will be easier if a note is made of empty databases when the back-up is made. Errors which may occur are generally related to the program being unable to find the files at the location given by the user. If the program stops with an error message, the safest procedure is to quit the program by entering a **q** or **Q** and check that the path names being used are correct before trying again.

After the program has copied all of the databases, it returns to the current account and checks each database for an overflow condition. If it finds an overflow, it will notify the user and ask if the database should be restructured. Overflow is a normal occurrence when information is being added to the databases. Each database is initially created to hold 65,535 characters (64K bytes) of information. When the information in a database exceeds 64K bytes, an overflow file is created for the remaining data. Having to search for data in an overflow file slows the system slightly. Therefore, the user should answer **YES** to the restructure query to allow the back-up program to restructure the file. Restructuring causes Revelation to allocate another 64K bytes of storage space for the database and clears the overflow condition.

### Restoring Databases from the Back-up Copy

Choice number 4 from the Utilities Menu runs the restore program which copies one or more databases from the back-up disk(s) to the current account.

CAUTION - This program deletes the databases on the current account after copying the equivalent databases from the back-up disk; so, be sure the current account file(s) are not needed before starting the program.

The procedure that the restore program uses for each database is to rename the existing database by adding a ".TEMP" extension to the database name (e.g. MD.DATA.TEMP), then to copy the back-up database to the current account, and finally to delete the old database. If the program is interrupted before the process is complete, the original database can be restored by renaming the ".TEMP" database back to the original name. The following databases and utility files may be copied from the back-up disk to the current account:

MD.DATA	MD.PLOT	MD.REF.XR
MD.REF	MD.SYM	MD.USER.XR
MD.AREA	MD.REPORT	MD.PLOT.XR
MD.USER	MD.SYS	MD.SYM.XR
FORMS	MD.DATA.XR	MD.REPORT.XR

When the Restore program is started, the screen clears and the program issues a warning concerning the destruction of current databases. Enter a "Y" or "y" to continue. The program then prompts for the location of the Revelation system. Enter the complete DOS path name to the Revelation system currently in use. This path name is used by the program to search for the current account. If an incorrect path name is given, the program will print an error message when it attempts to copy the files. The default for the Revelation system location is

C:\REV

indicating that the system resides on the C: drive in a sub-directory named REV. The program next prompts for the location of the back-up disk. Enter the complete DOS path name to the back-up disk location. The default is

A:

indicating that the A: drive is to be used for the back-up disk(s). A complete DOS path name to a sub-directory may be entered. If the back-up is contained on more than one disk, the program will prompt for a new disk after it has copied the required files from the first disk.

After the paths are entered, the program will inquire if the user wants to restore all of the files from the back-up disk(s). If the answer is YES (y or Y), the program will proceed to restore all the files that are on each of the back-up disks. If the answer is NO (n or N), the program will pause before restoring each file and ask if the file should be restored. This allows the user to restore selected files, if desired. The user can quit the program at any time by entering a q or Q at the file restore prompt. The program waits for the user to insert the

first back-up disk into the drive and press the **RETURN** key. If no errors occur, the program will inform the user as it copies each database from the back-up disk to the current account. If another back-up disk is required, the program will pause and request another disk in the back-up disk drive. Insert the next back-up disk and press the **RETURN** key to continue. Errors which may occur are generally related to the program being unable to find the files at the location given by the user. If an error message occurs, the safest procedure is to quit the program by entering a **q** or **Q** and check that the path names being used are correct before trying again.

If the restore program is unable to find a database on the current back-up disk, it will ask the user whether to search for it on the next back-up disk or to skip the database. This is where it is helpful to have a list of databases which were empty when the back-up was created. The normal response is to press the **RETURN** key so that the program will search the next disk. However, if the database does not exist on any of the back-up disks, the user must tell the program to skip (enter an "S") the database. If not told to skip the database, the program will continue to prompt for another disk to search. Be sure that the back-up disks are inserted in the back-up drive in the same order that they were created by the back-up program. If back-up disk #2 is inserted before disk #1, the program will halt with a "Database MD.DATA NOT found on disk 1" error message. Quit the program (enter a **Q** or a **q**), place the correct disk in the back-up drive, and restart the program to continue.

### Transferring Data Between Accounts

Because the two programs, back-up and restore, have no knowledge of the account in use, they can also be used to transfer data from one account to another. For example, to create a new account with information which is a subset of a current account:

1. Create the new account with empty databases using the installation procedure. See Appendix I, Installation of GSMODS.
2. LOGTO the old account which contains the information and run the back-up program. This will create a disk or set of disks which contain all of the information in the old account databases.
3. LOGTO the new account and run the restore program. From the restore program, the desired databases can be copied to the new account.
4. From the new account Main Menu, press the **F9** function key to access Revelation Command Level (TCL). From TCL, the Revelation **SELECT** and **DELETE** commands can be used to erase records in each database which are not needed in the new account.
5. Build a set of cross-reference indexes for the new account (see Chapter5, Building cross-reference indexes).

As an example, the following sequence of commands could be used to create a county (Elbert) subset of a database containing records for an entire state (Colorado). The sequence starts from the DOS prompt assuming the new account has been created with a name of ELBERT; comments are shown in square brackets.

**>REV COLORADO**

[Old account is named COLORADO]  
9 [Select Utilities Menu]  
3 [Select Back-up data files]

[Insert blank disk(s) and create complete back-up]

F9 [Return to Main Menu]  
10 [Exit Revelation]

**>REV ELBERT**

9 [Select Utilities Menu]  
4 [Select Restore data files]

[insert back-up disk(s) and restore all files]

F9 [Return to Main Menu]  
F9 [Access TCL]

**;SELECT MD.DATA WITH COUNTY NE "Elbert"**

[Select records to delete]

**>DELETE MD.DATA**

[Delete all selected records from MD.DATA]

[Repeat similar selection and deletion for each database, as necessary]

**;MODS**

[Return to the Main Menu]

## Chapter 8. QUICK REFERENCE

### 8. QUICK REFERENCE

Special words, symbols, and control keys	97
U. S. Postal Service state abbreviations	99
Deposit type codes	100
Geologic age abbreviations	103
Report parameter syntax	104
key  syntax	104
Page repeating	104
Line formatting	105
Column format codes	105
Multi-value selection codes	106
Cross-reference field list	107
Cross-reference screen options	108
System-defined plot symbol codes	109
Plot line codes	109
Boolean operators	109
Display colors	110

## Chapter 8. QUICK REFERENCE

### Special Words, Symbols, and Control Keys

#### Control Keys:

<u>Key</u>	<u>Active</u> <sup>1</sup>	<u>Description</u>
left <sup>2</sup>	All	Move cursor left one character
right <sup>2</sup>	All	Move cursor right one character
^left <sup>2</sup>	All	Move cursor left one word
^right <sup>2</sup>	All	Move cursor right one word
up <sup>2</sup>	Entry	Move cursor to previous field
down <sup>2</sup>	Entry	Move cursor to next field (same as RETURN)
Home	All	Move cursor to beginning of line
End	All	Move cursor to end of line
Ins	All	Toggle between insert and replace modes
Del	All	Delete character at current cursor position
backsp <sup>2</sup>	All	Delete character to the left of current cursor position
Esc	TCL	Prompts for video attribute sequence - good for testing color combinations
^D	Entry	Delete current record (from Change prompt only)
^E	Entry	Quit without filing current record
^T	Entry	Clear current entry screen and go to top
^X	Entry & TCL	Delete current line

#### Function Keys:

<u>Key</u>	<u>Active</u>	<u>Description</u>
F1	Entry	Display HELP screen for current field
F2	Entry	Copy information from previous record (single-valued field only)
F3	TCL	Display last command entered
F7	All	Clear from cursor to beginning of line
F8	All	Clear from cursor to end of line
F9	Menu	Return to previous menu
^F5	Menu	Return to TCL from any menu

## Special Characters and Words:

<u>Word</u>	<u>Active</u>	<u>Description</u>
?	Entry	Display HELP screen for current field
"	Entry	Copy information from previous record
>	GS-Entry	Go to top of next screen of entry set
<	GS-Entry	Go to top of first screen of entry set
!	GS-Entry	File record
!	GS-Program	Re-start program from beginning
-	GS-Entry	Stop copying defaults from previous record to current field
\	Key	Denotes beginning of cross-reference search parameter
=	Key	Reset default record counter
TOP	Entry	Clear current entry screen and go to top
END	Entry	Quit without filing current record
DELETE	Entry	Delete current record (from Change prompt only)
Q	GS-Program	Stop program, return to menu

## Special Terms for use with Which Value? prompt:

<u>Term</u>	<u>Alternate</u>	<u>Description</u>
B	PgUp	Display previous multi-valued window
F	PgDn	Display next multi-valued window
ADD	^A	Add values to end of multi-valued list
CLEAR	^C	Delete all values from multi-valued window
Dn	^D	Delete value no. n from multi-valued window
In	^I	Insert new value before value no. n in multi-valued list

<sup>1</sup>Notes:

All	Usable at any prompt
Entry	Usable at any prompt on any entry screen in the Revelation system unless otherwise noted
GS-Entry	Usable at any prompt on GSMODS entry screens only
GS-Program	Usable at most prompts in GSMODS programs
Key	Usable at record key prompt only
Menu	Usable at any menu
TCL	Usable at Revelation Command Level

<sup>2</sup>Keys

Left, right, up, down, and backspace are commonly represented by arrows on the computer keyboard

^ Hold down control key while pressing the next key



**U. S. Postal Service State Abbreviations**

AL	Alabama	MT	Montana
AK	Alaska	NE	Nebraska
AZ	Arizona	NV	Nevada
AR	Arkansas	NH	New Hampshire
AS	American Samoa	NJ	New Jersey
CA	California	NM	New Mexico
CZ	Canal Zone	NY	New York
CO	Colorado	NC	North Carolina
CT	Connecticut	ND	North Dakota
DE	Delaware	OH	Ohio
DC	District of Columbia	OK	Oklahoma
FL	Florida	OR	Oregon
GA	Georgia	PA	Pennsylvania
GU	Guam	PR	Puerto Rico
HI	Hawaii	RI	Rhode Island
ID	Idaho	SC	South Carolina
IL	Illinois	SD	South Dakota
IN	Indiana	TN	Tennessee
IA	Iowa	TT	Trust Territories
KS	Kansas	TX	Texas
KY	Kentucky	UT	Utah
LA	Louisiana	VT	Vermont
ME	Maine	VA	Virginia
MD	Maryland	VI	Virgin Islands
MA	Massachusetts	WA	Washington
MI	Michigan	WV	West Virginia
MN	Minnesota	WI	Wisconsin
MS	Mississippi	WY	Wyoming
MO	Missouri		

**Deposit type codes:**  
(after Taylor, Selner, and Johnson, 1986)

- 10. Placer deposits
  - 10.2 Modern
    - 10.21 Alluvial
    - 10.22 Marine, including beach, strand line
  - 10.4 Fossil
    - 10.41 Alluvial
    - 10.42 Marine, including beach, strand line
    - 10.47 Quartz-pebble conglomerate (Au, U, Th, Rand)
- 12. Residual deposits
  - 12.2 Resistate (mechanical)
    - 12.22 barite (Missouri)
  - 12.4 Chemical (concentrations, alteration minerals)
    - 12.42 clays
    - 12.44 bauxite
    - 12.46 iron (including "bog iron, manganese")
    - 12.48 vermiculite
    - 12.49 nickel (Riddle, OR)
- 14. Supergene base and precious metals
- 20. Organic-rich sedimentary deposits
  - 20.2 peat
  - 20.6 shale (metal-rich)
    - 20.62 metal-rich black shale
- 22. Syngenetic sedimentary deposits
  - 22.2 clays
    - 22.25 lithium clays
  - 22.3 shales (bloating, light-weight aggregate)
  - 22.4 carbonate rocks
    - 22.42 limestone
    - 22.44 dolomite
    - 22.46 nahcolite
  - 22.6 phosphorite
  - 22.8 evaporite
    - 22.82 gypsum-anhydrite-sulfur
    - 22.84 saline minerals
    - 22.86 saline brines
- 24. Iron formation
- 26. Sedimentary manganese
  - 26.2 bedded (Kalahari field)
  - 26.4 nodules
- 28. Sedimentary (bedded) barite

- 30. Syngenetic massive (and disseminated) sulfides
  - 30.2 Sedimentary (Rammelsberg)
  - 30.4 Iron formation, sulfide bearing
  - 30.6 Volcanic-hosted
    - 30.61 Ophiolite assemblage (Cyprus)
    - 30.63 Felsic to intermediate (Kuroko)
  - 30.8 Metamorphosed syngenetic sulfide deposits
- 36. Diagenetic sedimentary deposits
  - 36.2 clays
  - 36.4 zeolites
    - 36.42 saline lake (closed system)
    - 36.44 altered tuffs (open system)
  - 36.6 fluorite (Rome, OR)
  - 36.8 metals in sedimentary rocks
- 40. Epigenetic sedimentary rock-hosted deposits
  - 40.2 sandstone-hosted metals
    - 40.22 sandstone uranium, vanadium, silver
    - 40.24 sandstone-hosted "Mississippi Valley" (Laisvall, Sweden)
  - 40.4 sandstone, shale-hosted metals
    - 40.42 copper (Kupferschiefer)
    - 40.44 molybdenum (SD Badlands)
  - 40.6 carbonate-hosted metals
    - 40.62 "Mississippi Valley" base metals, cobalt
    - 40.64 Dolomitic Cu-Co (Zaire Cu)
- 50. Geothermal energy
  - 50.2 Steam
  - 50.4 Hot water (only)
- 52. Hot spring deposits
  - 52.1 carbonates (travertine)
  - 52.2 clays
  - 52.3 metals
    - 52.33 sedimentary rock-hosted
    - 52.35 volcanic rock-hosted
- 55. Hydrothermal (volcanic-subvolcanic)
  - 55.1 veins
  - 55.2 stockworks
  - 55.3 breccia pipes
  - 55.4 mantos
  - 55.5 disseminated
    - 55.55 volcanic Cu (Keeweenaw, MI)
  - 55.6 unconformity-vein (uranium)

- 57. Contact metamorphic
  - 57.1 Cu (Pb-Zn-Au-Ag-Mo, Carr Fork, UT)
  - 57.2 Zn-Pb (Ag-Cu-W, Ban Ban, Australia)
  - 57.5 W (Mo-Zn-Cu, Pine Creek, CA)
  - 57.6 Sn (W-F-Be, Lost River, AK)
  - 57.7 Fe (Cu-Co-Au, Daiquiri, Cuba)
  - 57.8 Nonmetallics
    - 57.81 magnesite (magnesite, brucite, Gabbs, NV)
    - 57.83 marble
- 58. Porphyry
  - 58.1 Cu
  - 58.3 Cu-Mo (Au)
  - 58.4 Au
  - 58.5 Mo (W)
  - 58.7 Sn
- 59. Greisen
  - 59.1 disseminated
  - 59.3 veins
  - 59.5 pegmatite-greisen veins
- 60. Volcanic-plutonic rocks
  - 60.1 pumice and perlite
- 66. Magmatic segregations, granitic plutons
  - 66.1 pegmatites
- 67. Magmatic segregations, mafic-ultramafic plutons
  - 67.1 sulfide (immiscible melts)
    - 67.11 podlike (Sudbury)
    - 67.13 layered, interstitial (Bushfeldt Pt)
  - 67.3 cumulates
    - 67.31 stratiform chromitite
    - 67.32 disseminated chromite
    - 67.34 podiform
  - 67.6 intrusive
    - 67.61 magnetite, chromite, ilmenite
  - 67.7 extrusive
    - 67.71 magnetite (lava)
- 68. Magmatic differentiates, undersaturated plutons (syenite-ultramafic complexes)
  - 68.5 intrusive
    - 68.51 carbonatite
  - 68.7 extrusive
    - 68.71 carbonate (lava)
- 69. Kimberlite pipes (diamond pipes)
  - 69.1 alnoite (diamond-bearing, Kimberly, Australia)

- 70. Meta-ultramafic
  - 70.1 asbestos
  - 70.3 serpentine
- 75. Regional metamorphic
  - 75.2 aluminosilicate minerals
  - 75.3 marble
  - 75.7 graphite
  - 75.8 talc

### Geologic Age Abbreviations

Cen	Cenozoic	Pal	Paleozoic
Quat	Quaternary	Perm	Permian
Holo	Holocene	Penn	Pennsylvanian
Pleis	Pleistocene	Carb	Carboniferous
Tert	Tertiary	Miss	Mississippian
Neo	Neogene	Dev	Devonian
Paleog	Paleogene	Sil	Silurian
Plio	Pliocene	Ord	Ordovician
Mio	Miocene	Camb	Cambrian
Oligo	Oligocene	Prec	Precambrian
Eo	Eocene	Prot	Proterozoic
Paleo	Paleocene	Arch	Archean
Mes	Mesozoic	E	Early
Cret	Cretaceous	M	Middle
Jur	Jurassic	L	Late
Tri	Triassic		
		?	inferred
		-	through
		,	and

## Report Parameter Syntax

### |key| Syntax

The vertical bars and the included special character string are replaced by the information specified under each description below.

fieldname	Replaced by the contents of the specified field from the current record. If  fieldname  occurs in the major section title, header, or footer, the current record is the record selected by the <b>Major Title/Header Sel Criteria</b> field or the <b>Major Footer Selection Criteria</b> field. If  fieldname  occurs in the minor section title, header, or footer, the current record is the current data record. Fieldname must be a defined dictionary field name in the Locality database (MD.DATA), and must be in uppercase letters.
+fieldname	Similar to  fieldname  except that the entire contents of the selected field is converted to uppercase.
@fieldname	Similar to  fieldname  except that fieldname must be a symbolic field defined in the dictionary of MD.DATA. See the Revelation Documentation for a description of symbolic fields (symbolic fields are not available to users of Run-Time versions of Revelation).
Note:	+fieldname  and  @fieldname  can be combined as long as the + precedes the @.  +@fieldname  is acceptable,  @+fieldname  is not.
PN	Replaced by the current page number.
DT	Replaced by the current system date in a mm/dd/yy format.
Rn,x	Replaced by the character x repeated n times.

### Page Repeating

Repeat fields are used to determine on which pages to print each line of the titles, headers, and footers of the report.

A	Print line on all pages of the report
F	Print line on the first page of the report only
L	Print line on the last page of the report only

## Line Formatting

The following are valid entries for all formatting fields:

C	Center the line or lines on the output page
Ln	Left-justify the line or lines starting in column <i>n</i>
Rn	Right-justify the line or lines <i>n</i> columns from the right edge of the output page
ALn	Alternately justify the line or lines <i>n</i> columns from the left on odd numbered pages and <i>n</i> columns from the right on even numbered pages
ARn	Alternately justify the line or lines <i>n</i> columns from the right on odd numbered pages and <i>n</i> columns from the left on even numbered pages
Wn,m,i	Word-wrap the line or lines between columns <i>n</i> and <i>m</i> . Line breaks only occur at spaces between words. It is possible to concatenate values from multi-valued fields such that no spaces are included. The system sees the result as a single word. If a word is longer than the space allotted for a word-wrap column, the system will break the word at the right edge of the column. <i>i</i> specifies the number of spaces to indent the first line. <i>i</i> may be positive or negative. A positive <i>i</i> generates a normal paragraph indent. A negative <i>i</i> with an equal, but positive <i>n</i> generates a hanging indent paragraph.

Examples: L5  
 AR  
 W5,80,-5  
 (Creates an 80 character per line paragraph with a 5 character hanging indent)

## Column Format Codes

C	Center the data within the column
Ln	Left-justify the data within the column starting in position <i>n</i>
Rn	Right-justify the data within the column <i>n</i> positions from the right edge of the data column
Wn,m,i	Word-wrap the data between positions <i>n</i> and <i>m</i> within the column. Word breaks only occur at spaces between words. <i>i</i> specifies the number of spaces to indent the first line. <i>i</i> may be positive or negative. A positive <i>i</i> generates a normal paragraph indent. A negative <i>i</i> with an equal, but positive <i>n</i> generates a hanging indent paragraph.

Examples: L5  
 W5,20,-5  
 (Creates an 20 character per line paragraph with a 5 character hanging indent)

## Multi-value Selection Codes

Concatenate, the most general option, is entered as follows:

**C***n,m,x*

The **C** is required to specify the concatenation option. The **n** is an integer which specifies the starting value to select for output from the multi-valued field. The **m** is an integer which specifies the last value to be output from the multi-valued field. The **x** is a character string which is to be inserted between each value.

The **N** option is a special case of concatenation. It is used when each value is to be output on a separate line. The format is:

**N***n,m*

The **N** tells the system to use a new line for each value. The **n** is an integer which specifies the starting value to select for output from the multi-valued field. The **m** is an integer which specifies the last value to be output from the multi-valued field.



### Cross-Reference Field List

The following fields are cross-referenced in each databases:

MD.DATA:	SITE	*
	SYNONYMS	*
	DISTRICT	
	COUNTY	
	2DEG.QUAD	
	PRIME.QUAD	
	COMMODITIES	
	DEP.CODE	
	ORE.MINERAL	
	KEY	
	REF.NO	
MD.REF:	AUTH.NAME	*
	REF.CIT	*
MD.USER:	USER.LNAME	*
MD.PLOT:	NSCALE	*
	NOTES	*
MD.SYM:	NAME	*
	NOTES	*
MD.REPORT:	COMMENT	*
	TITLE	*

Fields marked with an asterisk are primary cross-reference fields.

### Cross-Reference Screen Options

The following options are available from the Cross-reference screen:

<u>Entry</u>	<u>Action</u>
RETURN	Pressing the <b>RETURN</b> key returns to the data entry screen without selecting a record
#	Entering a number from the selection list returns to the data entry screen and displays the selected record
PG#	Entering <b>PG</b> followed by a page number displays another page of the selection list. There is no space between the command, PG, and the page number
new word	If a new word is entered, the system searches for the new word in the current cross-reference field(s). This is not a subset function; the entire database is searched for the new word. If the item being searched for is a number (such as a reference number), entering a new number at this prompt will cause the system to try to select that number record from the selection list (see #, above). To force the system to accept the number as a new search parameter, enter <b>key=n</b> , where n is the desired number
R	Refine the search. The system prompts for a new word and searches for the new word within the previously selected set of records. This is a true subset function
S	Sub-string search. The system will search for any cross-referenced word which contains the specified sub-string and display a list of records which contain the word
(.)	Continue the sub-string search. Entering a period after a sub-string search list is displayed will continue the search to the next cross-referenced word which contains the specified sub-string and display a list of records which contain the word

### System-Defined Plot Symbol Codes

The current list of symbol codes is as follows:

1 = circle	F1 = filled circle
2 = square	F2 = filled square
3 = triangle	F3 = filled triangle
4 = diamond	F4 = filled diamond
5 = hexagon	F5 = filled hexagon
6 = plus	
7 = X	
8 = asterisk	

### Plot Line Codes

Currently defined line codes are:

0 = Solid
1 = Dotted
2 = Short Dash
3 = Long Dash
4 = Dash - Dot
5 = Long Dash - Short Dash
6 = Long Dash - 2 Short Dashes

### Boolean Operators

The following are valid boolean operators for all selection criteria:

EQ	Equal
NE	Not equal
GT	Greater than
GE	Greater than or equal
LT	Less than
LE	Less than or equal
NOT	Not (precedes other operators as a modifier)
CONTAINS	Selects record if field <u>contains</u> value as a sub-string
[ ]	Same as CONTAINS
] [	Selects record if field <u>begins with</u> value
[ ]	Selects record if field <u>ends with</u> value
AND	Each phrase must be true
OR	Either phrase may be true

## Display Colors

### Acceptable Monochrome Codes:

Acceptable monochrome codes consist of a single character which specifies a foreground/background combination. White in the following descriptions refers to the bright color of the monitor whether it is green, amber, blue, white, or whatever.

1 = Black letters on white background  
2 = Blinking light gray letters on white background  
3 = Blinking black letters on bright white background  
4 = Bright white letters on white background  
8 = Light gray letters on white background  
D = Dark gray letters on black background  
H = Bright white letters on black background  
I = White letters on black background  
O = Blinking black letters on light gray background

### Acceptable Color Codes:

Acceptable color codes consist of two characters, the first character specifies the background color and the second character specifies the foreground color. Any of the following characters can be entered for either background or foreground color:

1 = Dark Blue	I = Light Blue
2 = Dark Green	J = Light Green
3 = Dark Cyan	K = Light Cyan
4 = Dark Red	L = Light Red
5 = Dark Magenta	M = Light Magenta
6 = Brown	N = Yellow
7 = Light Gray	8 = Dark Gray
P = Black	/ = White

## APPENDICES

### APPENDICES

I.	INSTALLATION OF REVELATION AND GSMODS	112
	Distribution Disks	115
	The States database	116
	Multiple accounts	116
	The LOGTO command	117
II.	CONFIGURING GSMODS	118
	The System Setup entry screen	118
III.	HARDWARE INSTALLATION AND CONFIGURATION	122
	Digitizers	122
	GTCO digitizer	122
	Calcomp digitizer	122
	Plotters	124
	Hewlett-Packard 75xx series plotters	124
	Hewlett-Packard 7475 plotter	124
IV.	REVELATION COMMAND SUMMARIES	125
V.	LOCALITY DATABASE	127
	MD.DATA field descriptions	128
VI.	REFERENCE DATABASE	150
	MD.REF field descriptions	150
VII.	REPORTER DATABASE	153
	MD.USER field descriptions	153
VIII.	AREA OUTLINE DATABASE	156
	MD.AREA field descriptions	156
IX.	SYSTEM SETUP DATABASE	158
	Color choices	158
	MD.SYS field descriptions	159
X.	REPORT PARAMETER DATABASE	167
	MD.REPORT field descriptions	168
XI.	PLOT PARAMETER DATABASE	192
	MD.PLOT field descriptions	192
XII.	USER-DEFINED SYMBOL DATABASE	205
	MD.SYM field descriptions	205
	REFERENCES CITED	209
	INDEX	210

## Appendix I. INSTALLATION OF REVELATION AND GSMODS

Before the GSMODS system can be installed, the Revelation database management system installation must be completed. If a complete Revelation system is being installed, follow the instructions which come with the Revelation documentation. If a Revelation Run-time system is being installed, there will be little or no documentation with the system. The Run-time system can be installed by simply copying all of the files on the Revelation distribution disk to a sub-directory on the hard disk. Although Revelation can be run on a computer with two 360K byte floppy disk drives, the combination of Revelation and GSMODS is too large and must be run from a high-capacity disk such as a hard disk or removable-cartridge disk system.

If a previous version of GSMODS has been in use and the information in the system is to be transferred to the new version, first make a back-up copy of the entire old system in case an error is made in the installation procedure, then follow the procedure below just as if it was a first-time installation. Be sure to use the same account name that was used with the earlier version. The installation program will update the GSMODS system to the new version, but will not destroy any of the existing data.

Once the Revelation system is installed and operating correctly (try some of the Revelation tutorials both to test the system installation and to become familiar with the Revelation environment), GSMODS can be installed by the following sequence:

1. Back-up the GSMODS distribution disks. This is important because the distribution disks are used each time a new account is created (see the section on multiple accounts, p. 116). Floppy disks do fail. Don't rely on a single copy any longer than necessary.
2. Put the GSMODS distribution disk #1 in the A: drive
3. Make the drive with the installed Revelation system the default drive and change directory to the Revelation sub-directory. On most systems this would be accomplished by entering the drive identifier at the DOS prompt (C: if Revelation is installed on the C: drive) and then the Change Directory command (cd \rev if REV is the name of the Revelation sub-directory). There must be at least 500K bytes of space available on the disk after the Revelation system is installed. GSMODS takes about 400K bytes, and the installation program needs about 100K bytes of working space.

Note: Entries shown in uppercase must be entered in uppercase.

4. Start Revelation by entering:

C:>REV SYSPROG

5. At the colon prompt enter:

**:\_ATTACH A:**

6. At the colon prompt enter:

**:\_RUN \$BP.U INSTALL-GSMODS**

If the error message "\$BP.U" is not a file name appears on the screen, the wrong disk is in the A: drive. Exit Revelation by entering **OFF**, place the correct disk in the A: drive, and start again at step #3.

7. The system will begin running the automatic installation program which will prompt for three items of information. First it will prompt for the path name to the Revelation system which is being used. Enter the DOS path name to the Revelation system as it is installed on the computer in use. A typical path name would be **C:\REV**, where the Revelation system is installed on the C: drive under a sub-directory named **REV**. Then the installation program will prompt for the account name to be used for the account to be created. Enter any name for the account as long as it is one word (no spaces or punctuation, please). The account name must be entered in uppercase letters! Typically the name of the State or County which contains the data to be entered is used as the account name. Finally, the program will prompt for a password. If a password is entered, it will be required for any subsequent access to the account. If a password is not desired, just press the **RETURN** key. Several system messages will appear and disappear as files are copied to the new system. These can be safely ignored until the system prompts for the next disk. Periods of three to five minutes may pass with no apparent action. Be patient. It takes awhile to digest all the new features that are being added to the Revelation system.
8. When the installation program has finished copying the information from the first GSMODS distribution disk, it will ask you to replace disk #1 with disk #2 in the A: drive. Press the **RETURN** key when disk #2 is ready.
9. At the colon prompt the installation is complete. Remove the GSMODS distribution disk from the A: drive and exit Revelation by entering:

**:\_OFF**

The system can be started at any time by entering:

**C:>REV accountname**

where accountname is the name which was used during installation. After a few moments, the GSMODS Main Menu will appear. See your DOS documentation for information about setting up a batch file to enter the system with a shorter command, if desired.

10. The first time this version of the system is run on a new account, GSMODS should be configured for your hardware. See the configuration instructions in Appendix II.



## Distribution Disks

Distribution disk #1 for GSMODS, version 1.01, should contain the following files:

Revelation file name	DOS file name	Contents
VOC	ROS10000.*	Revelation command directory
STATES	ROS10001.*	U. S. Postal Service abbreviations
\$BP	ROS10002.*	GSMODS programs
FORMS	ROS10003.*	FORMS formats
DATA.FNAMES	ROS10004.*	List of Locality database field names
MD.SYS	ROS10005.* ROSMEDIA.MAP README	System Setup database Revelation directory Program description

Distribution disk #2 for GSMODS, version 1.01, should contain the following files:

Revelation file name	DOS file name	Contents
RDES	ROS10000.*	GSMODS entry screens and menus
MD.DATA	ROS10001.*	Locality database
MD.DATA.XR	ROS10002.*	Locality indexes
MD.AREA	ROS10003.*	Area Outline database
MD.REF	ROS10004.*	Reference database
MD.REF.XR	ROS10005.*	Reference indexes
MD.USER	ROS10006.*	Reporter database
MD.USER.XR	ROS10007.*	Reporter indexes
MD.PLOT	ROS10008.*	Plot Parameter database
MD.PLOT.XR	ROS10009.*	Plot Parameter indexes
MD.SYM	ROS10010.*	User-defined Symbol database
MD.SYM.XR	ROS10011.*	User-defined Symbol indexes
MD.REPORT	ROS10012.*	Report Parameter database
MD.REPORT.XR	ROS10013.*	Report Parameter indexes
	\$PDISK	PDISK command
	\$SETPTR	PDISK command
	C9000.BAS	Calcomp digitizer initialization program
	C9100.BAS	Calcomp digitizer initialization program
	ROSMEDIA.MAP README	Revelation directory Program description

DOS file names which are shown with an asterisk extension in the tables on p. 115 may consist of several DOS files with numeric extensions such as .000, .010, etc. To see a directory of Revelation file names (databases), start GSMODS and from the Main Menu press the **F9** function key. From the colon prompt (Revelation Command Level, TCL) enter the following command:

**;**LISTFILES****

### **The States database**

**NOTE:** The following section is only important if you work outside the United States and need to change the valid codes for states (or other political subdivisions).

Each time an entry is made in the **State** field of either the Locality database or the Reporter information database, the entry is checked to see if it is a valid USPS State abbreviation. The input validation is accomplished by comparing the entry with all of the records in the States database. There is one record in the States database for each valid code; the code (for example, CA) is also the record ID. If GSMODS is to be used for localities outside of the United States, additional codes (for States or other national subdivisions) can be added to the States database by the use of a utility entry screen. To access the States entry screen, start GSMODS and from the Main Menu press the **F9** function key. From the colon prompt (Revelation Command Level, TCL) enter the following command:

**;**ENTER ST.ENTRY****

An entry screen will appear with two fields. See Chapter 4 for a discussion of entering and editing information on entry screens. The first field on this screen, **State Code**, is where the desired new state code is entered exactly as it will be entered in the **State** fields of the Reporter information and Locality databases. State codes are converted to uppercase as they are entered. The second field, **State Name**, is used to enter the full name of the state being coded. Records can be added, deleted, or edited from this entry screen.

### **Multiple Accounts**

The installation procedure described above (p. 112) creates an initial account on the Revelation/GSMODS system. This may be the only account which is needed if the information in the system belongs to a single project and is not too voluminous. However, if the amount of information begins to make the system unacceptably slow and the information can be easily divided by region or subject, or if information from several projects is being stored on the system, the user may want to create several accounts. Each separate account has its own account name, password, and databases. The remainder of the system, Revelation

commands and GSMODS menu structure, is shared between all accounts.

The procedure for creating a new account is exactly the same as the procedure for creating the initial account as described on p. 112. Follow the same procedure starting at step 2, p. 112, using a new account name, and the system will create the new account with empty databases. To move some of the information records from the original account to the new account, see the section on transferring data between accounts in Chapter 7. To move from one account to another, select item 10, Exit Revelation, from the Main Menu. At the DOS prompt, enter **REV accountname** with the name of the new account. The system will re-start at the Main Menu of the new account.

### The LOGTO Command

A quicker way to transfer between accounts is to use the LOGTO command. LOGTO is a Revelation command which allows the user to move between accounts without having to exit and re-start Revelation. It is entered from the Revelation Command Level (TCL) colon prompt. To move from one account to another using the LOGTO command, Return to the GSMODS Main Menu and then exit to TCL by pressing the **F9** function key. The colon prompt will appear. Enter:

**;**LOGTO accountname****

where accountname is the name of the new account. Both the command name (LOGTO) and the account name must be entered in uppercase letters. If a password has been created for the new account, Revelation will prompt for the password. If not, the system will go directly to the Main Menu for the new account.

## Appendix II. CONFIGURING GSMODS

To configure GSMODS for the hardware in use, you must run the system setup program. This should be done when GSMODS is first installed on the system, and any time the hardware configuration of the system is changed. When GSMODS is started, the Main Menu will be on the screen. From the Main Menu select item number 9, Utilities. This will bring the Utilities Menu onto the screen. From the Utilities Menu select item number 1, Change System Variables. This choice will bring up the System Setup entry screen (figure 29).

### The System Setup Entry Screen

When the System Setup entry screen is first displayed, the cursor will be in the **Record No.** field. This data entry screen operates like the other data entry screens within the GSMODS system. It may be helpful to read the detailed sections concerning data entry screens in Chapters 3 and 4 before proceeding with this entry screen. Any number of sets of system variables can be stored in this file; however, only one set is active at a time. The default active set of variables is the set stored in record number 1. Enter a **1** in the **Record No.** field (or press the **RETURN** key) to display the current values of the system variables. The system will display the default settings for a system with a monochrome display adapter and typical printer, plotter, and digitizer (figure 30).

Your hardware configuration is likely to be somewhat different than the default settings. At this point, the cursor will be at the Change prompt at the bottom of the screen. Any of the configuration settings can be changed by entering the number of the field (as shown on the screen) at the Change prompt. The screen is divided into four sections. The first set of fields is used to define the type of video display connected to your computer and the colors to use for various types of screen text. Tables of available colors are included in each of the help screens for these fields. The second section is used to define the printer interface and maximum line width at the printer's normal settings. The third and fourth sections are similar and are used to define the interface between the computer and the digitizer and plotter, respectively. To see the help screen with the available options for any field, enter the number of the field at the Change prompt and then enter a **?** in the field (or press the **F1** function key). To return to the Change prompt without changing the field entry, press the **RETURN** key. When there are no more changes to be made to the system variables, press the **RETURN** key at the Change prompt. The system will then use the current screen to reset the system and return with an empty System Setup entry screen. At this point if you enter **END** in the **Record No.** field, the system will return to the Utilities Menu.

Each time the GSMODS system is started, it resets the system variables to the settings in the last record accessed from the System Setup entry screen. There are two records supplied with the system; record number 1 contains default settings for a monochrome display system, and record number 2 (figure 31) contains default settings for a color display system. You can switch between the two records simply by entering the record number at the **Record No.** prompt and filing the record by entering a return at the Change prompt and then END at the next **Record No.** prompt to exit from System Setup. To create other combinations without changing the default settings, either enter all the data in a new record by entering a new record number in the **Record No.** field, or copy one of the default records to a new record number and then edit the desired fields (See Chapter 5 for information on the Revelation COPY command). When the system variables are set to correspond to the computer hardware, exit by entering END at the **Record No.** field which will return control to the Utilities Menu. To return to the Main Menu from the Utilities Menu, press the **F9** function key. Changing the display colors does not affect the GSMODS menu system until you exit the system and return.

GSMODS - System Setup Screen		1 Record No. ____	
2 Display Type	____		
Display Colors:	3 Normal ____	4 Reverse ____	
	5 Highlight ____	6 Highlight Rev. ____	
Printer:	7 Port ____	9 Width ____	
	8 Comm. Parameters ____		
Digitizer:	10 Type ____	11 Port ____	
	12 Comm. Speed ____		
Plotter:	13 Type ____	14 Port ____	
	15 Comm. Speed ____		
16 Comments	_____		

Figure 29. GSMODS System Setup entry screen.

GSMODS - System Setup Screen		1 Record No. 1	
2 Display Type	MDA		
Display Colors:	3 Normal I	4 Reverse 1	
	5 Highlight H	6 Highlight Rev. 4	
Printer:	7 Port 1	9 Width 80	
	8 Comm. Parameters		
Digitizer:	10 Type 1	11 Port 2	
	12 Comm. Speed 1200		
Plotter:	13 Type 1	14 Port 1	
	15 Comm. Speed 4800		
16 Comments	This is the normal setup using all defaults - MDA.		

Figure 30. GSMODS System Setup entry screen with monochrome default settings.

GSMODS - System Setup Screen		1	Record No.	2
2	Display Type	CGA		
Display Colors:		3	Normal	17
		4	Reverse	3N
		5	Highlight	1N
		6	Highlight Rev.	4M
Printer:		7	Port	1
		8	Comm. Parameters	
Digitizer:		10	Type	1
		11	Port	2
		12	Comm. Speed	1200
Plotter:		13	Type	1
		14	Port	1
		15	Comm. Speed	4800
16	Comments	Normal setup for CGA system		

Figure 31. GSMODS System Setup entry screen with color default settings.

## Appendix III. HARDWARE INSTALLATION AND CONFIGURATION

### Digitizers

#### GTCO Digitizer

The switches on a GTCO digitizer must be set to the following options:

- parity disabled
- parity odd
- 1 stop bit
- 8 data bits
- include push-button code
- include space
- include carriage return
- no line feed
- 5 digit ASCII
- serial ports A and B
- alarm disabled
- RS-232 interface
- incremental output
- point/line mode
- 16-button cursor
- inch data
- ASCII data
- control line activity not monitored

There are two options for cables to connect between the GTCO digitizer and the computer serial port. A straight-through, 4-wire modem cable can be attached from port B (J6) on the digitizer to the computer serial port. For this cable, pins 1, 2, 3, and 7 are connected straight through and pins 5, 6, 8, and 20 are tied together on the computer end of the cable. Alternatively, a 4-wire, null-modem cable can be attached from port A (J5) on the digitizer to the computer serial port. For this cable, pins 1 and 7 are connected straight through and pins 2 and 3 are swapped. Pin 2 on one end of the cable is attached to pin 3 on the other end and vice versa. Also, pins 4 and 5 are tied together at each end of the cable and pins 6, 7, 8, and 20 are tied together at each end of the cable.

#### Calcomp Digitizer

Calcomp models 9000 and 9100 digitizers with the "Universal Formatter Option" can be used by programming the digitizer to emulate a GTCO digitizer. There are two utility programs on distribution disk #2, **C9000.BAS** and **C9100.BAS**, which will automatically do the re-programming. Copy the program which corresponds to the model number of your digitizer to the disk and directory which contains your Revelation system before proceeding with the following instructions. These are BASIC programs which



require either IBM BASIC/BASICA or GWBASIC to run. Before the programs can be run, the OPEN statement in the program must be correct for your installation. The OPEN statement is currently set for serial port #2 and 4800 baud. To change the settings, run your BASIC interpreter, LOAD the correct program for your digitizer, and LIST the program. You will find a statement number 10 which looks like this:

```
10 OPEN COM2:4800,N,8,1,RS,CS,DS,CD" AS #1
```

If your digitizer is attached to serial port #1, change COM2 to COM1 on line 10. If your digitizer is setup to run at a speed other than 4800 baud, change the 4800 to the correct speed on line 10. Do not change anything else in the program. When you are finished changing line 10, press the RETURN key until the cursor is at the bottom of the screen on a blank line. Then SAVE the program to its original name and exit BASIC by entering the word SYSTEM. To run the Calcomp program, enter one of the following commands (depending on your digitizer model and BASIC version) from the DOS prompt:

```
BASICA C9000
BASICA C9100
GWBASIC C9000
GWBASIC C9100
```

The program only needs to be run once each time the digitizer is turned on or reset. The program can be run from a batch file which starts your GSMODS system as long as you turn the digitizer on before running the batch program. The program can also be run from Revelation Command Level (colon prompt) by entering a command such as:

**:PC BASICA C9000**

This command assumes the program is copied onto your Revelation sub-directory and BASICA (or GWBASIC) has a defined path name. A full path name can be substituted for either BASICA or C9000 in the command.

The GTCO 16-button cursor has keys labeled 0 through 9 and A through F. The Calcomp 16-button cursor has keys labeled 0 through 9, A through D, #, and \*. Because GSMODS only uses keys 0 through 9 and A through D, the only difference between using the two brands of digitizer with GSMODS is the necessity of running the utility program for the Calcomp. See the Calcomp documentation for instructions on switch settings on the digitizer and on the correct cable to use to connect the digitizer to the computer serial port.

## Plotters

### Hewlett-Packard 75xx Series Plotters

These plotters must be set to run in the following modes: remote, standalone, hardware handshake, direct, full duplex, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, and parity off. The plotter may be set to any speed which is consistent with the selection in the configuration file (see Appendix II, Configuration), but the maximum reliable speed at this time seems to be 4800 baud. The HP 7550A plotter is set by a complex series of soft switches on the front panel; the HP 7570A, 758x, and 759x plotters are set by switches on the rear of the machine. Refer to the plotter documentation for help in locating and setting the switches.

Information on connecting the plotter to the computer serial port is contained in the "Operation and Interconnection Manual" which comes with each Hewlett-Packard plotter.

### Hewlett-Packard 7475 Plotter

This plotter is set by switches on the rear of the machine. Switch S1 must be off (0) and switch S2 must be on (1). The switch marked D-Y must be in the D position, the switch marked US should be in the US position for using 8 1/2" by 11" or 11" by 17" paper, and the switch marked A3-A4 may be in either position depending on which size paper is most commonly used. Switches B4 through B1 set the communication speed and number of stop bits. The plotter may be set to any speed which is consistent with the selection in the configuration file (see Appendix II, Configuration); but, due to the small memory buffer in this model, the maximum reliable speed at this time seems to be 1200 baud. Communications must be set to 1 stop bit. Refer to the plotter documentation for help in locating and setting the switches. A common configuration to start with is as follows:

<u>Switch</u>	<u>Setting</u>	<u>Description</u>
S1	0	
S2	1	
D-Y	D	Direct connection to computer
MET-US	US	English paper sizes
A3-A4	A4	Default to 11" by 17" paper
B4	0	1200 baud, 1 stop bit
B3	1	" "
B2	1	" "
B1	1	" "

Information on connecting the plotter to the computer serial port is contained in the "Operation and Interconnection Manual" which comes with each Hewlett-Packard plotter.

## Appendix IV. REVELATION COMMAND SUMMARIES

The following Revelation commands can be entered from the Revelation Command Level (TCL) colon prompt. This list is a small subset of the commands available and is provided here for users who do not have access to Revelation documentation. For more information on other options for these commands and for use of other Revelation commands, see the Revelation documentation. Partial documentation for most commands is available on-line from the HELP command. Command names are given in uppercase; user supplied parameters are given in lowercase.

<u>Command</u>	<u>Description</u>
CHANGE-PASSWORD	Change password on current account
CLEAR	Clears the current select list and returns to the colon prompt (see SELECT command, Chapter 6)
CLEAR-FILE filename	Delete all records from the data section of the file (database) given in filename
CLS	Clear display screen
COPY file1 rec1 TO: rec2	Copy a record named rec1 in a file named file1 to a new record named rec2 (see COPY command, Chapter 5) Options: (P) Copy record to printer (PS) Copy to printer and suppress line numbers
COUNT filename	Count number of records in file and display on screen
DELETE filename rec	Delete record named rec from file named filename. Additional records may be listed separating each record name with a space (see DELETE command, Chapter 5)
DELETE-ACCOUNT accountname	Delete an entire account and all its files from the system. CAUTION - there is no facility for retrieving any information from the account once it has been deleted
EXIT	Entered from the DOS prompt to return to Revelation after a PC command

FORM                    Command to produce simple customized reports  
                         (see FORM command, Chapter 6)

HELP                    Lists TCL commands and examples

LIST filename criteria options  
                         List all or part of a file (see LIST command,  
                         Chapter 6)  
                         Options:  
                         (E)    Suppress page eject before  
                                printing  
                         (N)    Nopage - continuous scroll on  
                                display screen  
                         (P)    Printer output

LISTFILES               List currently attached files (databases)  
LISTFILES (P)           List currently attached files to printer

LOGTO account           Change to a different account without leaving  
                         Revelation (see LOGTO command, Appendix I)

OFF                     Exit Revelation

PC command             Execute DOS command and return to Revelation  
                         when command is finished

PC                      Call DOS and remain at DOS level until an  
                         EXIT command is entered at the DOS prompt

PDISK pathname          Re-direct printer output to DOS file named in  
                         pathname (see PDISK command, Chapter 6)

PDISK PRN               Direct printer output back to printer

RENAME-FILE oldname    Change the name of a database or file

SELECT filename criteria  
                         Create list of records from the database  
                         named filename which match the selection  
                         criteria (see SELECT command, Chapter 6)

TIME                    Display current system date and time

WHO                     Displays current account and terminal number

## Appendix V. LOCALITY DATABASE

### MD.DATA field names:

RECORD	Record number
DATE	Date of record entry
FNAME	Reporter given names
LNAME	Reporter last name
AFFIL	Reporter affiliation
REPORTER	Reporter full name and affiliation
SITE	Site name
SYNONYMS	Other names for site
REC.TYPE	Type of record
SITE.TYPE	Type of site
SOURCE	Source of information in record
DISTRICT	Mining district or area
COUNTY	County of site location
STATE	State of site location
COUNTRY	Country of site location
2DEG.QUAD	2 degree quadrangle
PRIME.QUAD	Primary quadrangle
SCALE	Scale of primary quadrangle
LATITUDE	Latitude of location
LONGITUDE	Longitude of location
SECTION	Location of site (section, township, range, etc.)
COMMODITIES	Commodities list
DEP.TYPE	Type of deposit
DEP.CODE	Code for type of deposit
PROD.CODE	Production code
PRODUCTION	Description of production
HR.NAME	Name of host rock
HR.LITH	Description of host rock
HR.AGE	Age of host rock
MINERAL.AGE	Age of mineralization
ASSOC.ROCK	Associated igneous rock description
ASSOC.AGE	Age of associated igneous rock
TECTONICS	Tectonic setting
ORE.MINERAL	Ore minerals list
NONORE.MINERAL	Description of non-ore mineralogy
ORE.CONTROL	Description of ore controls
DESCRIPTION	General deposit description
KEY	Search key list
COMMENT	Comments
NOTES	Private notes
REF.NO	Reference number list
MRDS.NO	MRDS record number
CMR.NO	CMR branch file number

**MD.DATA Field Descriptions**

(prompt name is followed by screen number and prompt number)

**Record Number (1,1)**

System ID	RECORD
Field Number	0
Field Type	Key
Input Checking	Integer between 1 and 99999
Entry Required?	Yes
Default	Next available empty record number
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a five digit, sequential, working file number which is assigned by the system each time a new record is created. The record number must be an integer between 1 and 99999. To enter a new record, press the **RETURN** key. To edit an existing record, enter the record number. To reset the default record number counter, enter an "=" followed by the desired value.

Existing records may also be retrieved (and edited) by entering a search parameter instead of a record number. For more information on cross-referencing techniques, see the discussion in Chapter 5.

**Fields which can be cross-referenced:**

Field Prompt	System ID
Site Name	SITE
Synonyms	SYNONYMS
District	DISTRICT
County	COUNTY
2° Quad Name	2DEG.QUAD
Primary Quad	PRIME.QUAD
Commodities	COMMODITIES
Deposit Code	DEP.CODE
Ore Minerals	ORE.MINERAL
Search Keys	KEY
References	REF.NO

**Entry Date (1,2)**

System ID	DATE
Field Number	3
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Valid date
Entry Required?	Yes
Default	Current system date
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

Date that the record was entered or significantly altered.  
Enter date as MM/DD/YY.

**Reporter**

System ID	REPORTER
Field Number	
Field Type	Symbolic
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	
Default	Reporter's name and affiliation from most recently accessed record in Reporter database
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field has no prompt because the information is automatically copied directly from the Reporter database. It contains the name (preferably first name, middle initial, and last name) of the person responsible for the contents of the record and that person's affiliation. The purpose of this field is to provide users with a contact for further information about this particular record. This information should be updated if substantial change is made to the record.

The information displayed by this field is stored in three fields which are not separately displayed on the data entry screen, FNAME, LNAME, and AFFIL. This information can be changed by entering 3, 4, or 5 as the field to change at the Change prompt. The current value for the field appears at the bottom of the screen for editing. After the value has been changed, pressing the **RETURN** key stores the value in the record.

**Site Name (1,6)**

System ID	SITE
Field Number	7
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	Yes
Default	
Cross-reference?	Yes
Description:	

The most well known or the most recent name of the site, occurrence, district, or area that is being described by this record.

**Synonyms (1,7)**

System ID	SYNONYMS
Field Number	8
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	Yes
Description:	

Any other names (not already entered in the **Site Name** field) by which the site or area has been known. This is a multi-valued field; any number of names can be entered.

**Record Type (1,8)**

System ID	REC.TYPE
Field Number	9
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes given below
Entry Required?	Yes
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

The type of record being entered. A two-character required field. Entry may be either upper- or lowercase.

**First Character:**

S for Site records (data from a single locality)  
A for Area records (summary of mining district or mineralized area)

**Second Character:**

M for Metallic commodities  
N for Non-metallic commodities  
B for Both metallic and non-metallic commodities

Example: SM



**Site Type (1,9)**

System ID	SITE.TYPE
Field Number	10
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes given below
Entry Required?	Yes
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

Type of site or area being described by this record. A one-character required field. Entry may be either upper- or lowercase.

A = Mineralized area  
D = Mining District  
M = Mine  
P = Prospect  
C = Claim  
O = Occurrence  
H = Drill Hole

**Information Source (1,10)**

System ID	SOURCE
Field Number	11
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes given below
Entry Required?	Yes
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

Describes the primary type of information used to create the record. A one-character required field.

1 = Published literature  
2 = Unpublished report  
3 = Field observation  
4 = MRDS  
5 = Personal communication

**District (1,11)**

System ID	DISTRICT
Field Number	12
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	Yes
Description:	

Name(s) of the mining district(s) or mineralized area(s) which contain the site being described. Multi-valued field; any number of names may be entered.

**County (1,12)**

System ID	COUNTY
Field Number	13
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	Yes
Description:	

Enter the full name of the county or counties in which the deposit is located. Do not enter the word "County". This is a multi-valued field; any number of county names may be entered.

**State (1,13)**

System ID	STATE
Field Number	14
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match valid postal code
Entry Required?	No
Default	State field of most recently accessed reporter information record
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

The 2-character U.S. Postal Service abbreviation for the name of the state in which the deposit or area is located. If an area is in multiple states, enter duplicate records with a different state code in each record. Records are stored in the Branch of Central Mineral Resources master file by state; entering duplicate records ensures that each state file contains a copy of the record.

**U.S. Postal Service State Abbreviations**

AL	Alabama	MT	Montana
AK	Alaska	NE	Nebraska
AZ	Arizona	NV	Nevada
AR	Arkansas	NH	New Hampshire
AS	American Samoa	NJ	New Jersey
CA	California	NM	New Mexico
CZ	Canal Zone	NY	New York
CO	Colorado	NC	North Carolina
CT	Connecticut	ND	North Dakota
DE	Delaware	OH	Ohio
DC	District of Columbia	OK	Oklahoma
FL	Florida	OR	Oregon
GA	Georgia	PA	Pennsylvania
GU	Guam	PR	Puerto Rico
HI	Hawaii	RI	Rhode Island
ID	Idaho	SC	South Carolina
IL	Illinois	SD	South Dakota
IN	Indiana	TN	Tennessee
IA	Iowa	TT	Trust Territories
KS	Kansas	TX	Texas
KY	Kentucky	UT	Utah
LA	Louisiana	VT	Vermont
ME	Maine	VA	Virginia
MD	Maryland	VI	Virgin Islands
MA	Massachusetts	WA	Washington
MI	Michigan	WV	West Virginia
MN	Minnesota	WI	Wisconsin
MS	Mississippi	WY	Wyoming
MO	Missouri		

**Country (1,14)**

System ID	COUNTRY
Field Number	15
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	Country field of most recently accessed reporter information record
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

Enter the name of the country in which the deposit or area is located.

**2° Degree Quad Name (1,15)**

System ID	2DEG.QUAD
Field Number	16
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	Yes
Description:	

The name(s) of the 1:250,000 scale quadrangle(s) in which the site or area is located. Do not enter the word "Quadrangle" as part of the name. This is a multi-valued field; as many quadrangle names as necessary may be entered.

Note: This field is normally entered during the process of digitizing the location and need not be entered into the data record from the keyboard.

**Primary Quad (1,16)**

System ID	PRIME.QUAD
Field Number	17
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	Yes
Description:	

The name(s) of the quadrangle(s) used to determine the accurate location of the site or area boundary. Normally a 1:24,000 or 1:62,500 scale quadrangle. Do not enter the word "Quadrangle" as part of the name. This is a multi-valued field; as many quadrangle names as necessary may be entered.

Note: This field is normally entered during the process of digitizing the locations and need not be entered into the data record from the keyboard.

### Scale (1,17)

System ID	SCALE
Field Number	18
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must be an integer between 200 and 250000
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

The scale of the primary quadrangle(s) used to digitize the location of the record. Enter the denominator of the fractional scale of the primary quadrangle without punctuation. (24000, not 1:24,000; acceptable values are 200 to 250000). One value should be entered into this field for each value which is entered into the **Primary Quad** field.

Note: This information is normally entered during the process of digitizing the location and need not be entered into the data record from the keyboard.

### Latitude (1,18)

System ID	LATITUDE
Field Number	19
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match format given below
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

Latitude of the site (or the center of the area) being described, to the nearest tenth of a second. Normally obtained by digitizing from the primary quadrangle. If the location must be entered manually, be sure the location information is accurate and enter as:

dd mm ss n

where dd = degrees  
 mm = minutes  
 ss = seconds  
 n = N or S

Notes: dd and mm must be entered as integers. All four parts of the latitude must be entered, separated by spaces. A note should be placed in the **Comments** field describing the accuracy of the

location if it is not digitized from the primary quadrangle.

### Longitude (1,19)

System ID	LONGITUDE
Field Number	20
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match format given below
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

Longitude of the site (or center of the area) being described, to the nearest tenth of a second. Normally obtained by digitizing from the primary quadrangle. If the location must be entered manually, be sure the location is as accurate as possible, and enter as:

ddd mm ss e

where: ddd = degrees  
       mm = minutes  
       ss = seconds  
       e = E or W

Notes: ddd and mm must be integers. All four parts of the longitude must be present and separated by spaces. If the location is not digitized from the primary quadrangle, a note should be added to the **Comments** field describing the accuracy of the location information.

### Loc. (Sec,T,R) (1,20)

System ID	SECTION
Field Number	21
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

The location of the site or area in terms of township, section, and range, including quarter-section descriptions, etc. This is an unstructured text field in which the user can arrange the data in any manner desired.

**Commodities (1,21)**

System ID	COMMODITIES
Field Number	22
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	Yes
Description:	

Known commodities from the site or area being described. Use correct chemical symbols for elements (Au, Ag, etc.) and names of minerals if the mineral is the commodity, not the element. List in decreasing order of importance. This is a multi-valued field; as many commodities as desired may be entered.

**Deposit Type (1,22)**

System ID	DEP.TYPE
Field Number	23
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

A label(s) that you would attach to the type of deposit being described (epithermal vein, massive sulfide, placer, etc.). This is a multi-valued field; as many deposit types as needed may be entered. The system will request a corresponding **Deposit Code** for each deposit type before returning to the **Deposit Type** field for the next value.

**Deposit Code (1,23)**

System ID	DEP.CODE
Field Number	24
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must be a decimal number between 10 and 99.999
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	Yes
Description:	

A numeric code that most closely fits the deposit described by the corresponding entry in the **Deposit Type** field. This field is used for searching and sorting the records by deposit type even though reporters have used different short descriptive terms for the same type of deposit. The following codes are recommended:

**Deposit type codes:**

(after Taylor, Selner, and Johnson, 1986)

- 10. Placer deposits
  - 10.2 Modern
    - 10.21 Alluvial
    - 10.22 Marine, including beach, strand line
  - 10.4 Fossil
    - 10.41 Alluvial
    - 10.42 Marine, including beach, strand line
    - 10.47 Quartz-pebble conglomerate (Au, U, Th, Rand)
- 12. Residual deposits
  - 12.2 Resistate (mechanical)
    - 12.22 barite (Missouri)
  - 12.4 Chemical (concentrations, alteration minerals)
    - 12.42 clays
    - 12.44 bauxite
    - 12.46 iron (including "bog iron, manganese")
    - 12.48 vermiculite
    - 12.49 nickel (Riddle, OR)
- 14. Supergene base and precious metals
- 20. Organic-rich sedimentary deposits
  - 20.2 peat
  - 20.6 shale (metal-rich)
    - 20.62 metal-rich black shale
- 22. Syngenetic sedimentary deposits
  - 22.2 clays
    - 22.25 lithium clays
  - 22.3 shales (bloating, light-weight aggregate)
  - 22.4 carbonate rocks
    - 22.42 limestone
    - 22.44 dolomite
    - 22.46 nahcolite
  - 22.6 phosphorite
  - 22.8 evaporite
    - 22.82 gypsum-anhydrite-sulfur
    - 22.84 saline minerals
    - 22.86 saline brines
- 24. Iron formation
- 26. Sedimentary manganese
  - 26.2 bedded (Kalahari field)
  - 26.4 nodules
- 28. Sedimentary (bedded) barite



- 30. Syngenetic massive (and disseminated) sulfides
  - 30.2 Sedimentary (Rammelsberg)
  - 30.4 Iron formation, sulfide bearing
  - 30.6 Volcanic-hosted
    - 30.61 Ophiolite assemblage (Cyprus)
    - 30.63 Felsic to intermediate (Kuroko)
  - 30.8 Metamorphosed syngenetic sulfide deposits
- 36. Diagenetic sedimentary deposits
  - 36.2 clays
  - 36.4 zeolites
    - 36.42 saline lake (closed system)
    - 36.44 altered tuffs (open system)
  - 36.6 fluorite (Rome, OR)
  - 36.8 metals in sedimentary rocks
- 40. Epigenetic sedimentary rock-hosted deposits
  - 40.2 sandstone-hosted metals
    - 40.22 sandstone uranium, vanadium, silver
    - 40.24 sandstone-hosted "Mississippi Valley" (Laisvall, Sweden)
  - 40.4 sandstone, shale-hosted metals
    - 40.42 copper (Kupferschiefer)
    - 40.44 molybdenum (SD Badlands)
  - 40.6 carbonate-hosted metals
    - 40.62 "Mississippi Valley" base metals, cobalt
    - 40.64 Dolomitic Cu-Co (Zaire Cu)
- 50. Geothermal energy
  - 50.2 Steam
  - 50.4 Hot water (only)
- 52. Hot spring deposits
  - 52.1 carbonates (travertine)
  - 52.2 clays
  - 52.3 metals
    - 52.33 sedimentary rock-hosted
    - 52.35 volcanic rock-hosted
- 55. Hydrothermal (volcanic-subvolcanic)
  - 55.1 veins
  - 55.2 stockworks
  - 55.3 breccia pipes
  - 55.4 mantos
  - 55.5 disseminated
    - 55.55 volcanic Cu (Keeweenaw, MI)
  - 55.6 unconformity-vein (uranium)

- 57. Contact metamorphic
  - 57.1 Cu (Pb-Zn-Au-Ag-Mo, Carr Fork, UT)
  - 57.2 Zn-Pb (Ag-Cu-W, Ban Ban, Australia)
  - 57.5 W (Mo-Zn-Cu, Pine Creek, CA)
  - 57.6 Sn (W-F-Be, Lost River, AK)
  - 57.7 Fe (Cu-Co-Au, Daiquiri, Cuba)
  - 57.8 Nonmetallics
    - 57.81 magnesite (magnesite, brucite, Gabbs, NV)
    - 57.83 marble
- 58. Porphyry
  - 58.1 Cu
  - 58.3 Cu-Mo (Au)
  - 58.4 Au
  - 58.5 Mo (W)
  - 58.7 Sn
- 59. Greisen
  - 59.1 disseminated
  - 59.3 veins
  - 59.5 pegmatite-greisen veins
- 60. Volcanic-plutonic rocks
  - 60.1 pumice and perlite
- 66. Magmatic segregations, granitic plutons
  - 66.1 pegmatites
- 67. Magmatic segregations, mafic-ultramafic plutons
  - 67.1 sulfide (immiscible melts)
    - 67.11 podlike (Sudbury)
    - 67.13 layered, interstitial (Bushfeldt Pt)
  - 67.3 cumulates
    - 67.31 stratiform chromitite
    - 67.32 disseminated chromite
    - 67.34 podiform
  - 67.6 intrusive
    - 67.61 magnetite, chromite, ilmenite
  - 67.7 extrusive
    - 67.71 magnetite (lava)
- 68. Magmatic differentiates, undersaturated plutons (syenite-ultramafic complexes)
  - 68.5 intrusive
    - 68.51 carbonatite
  - 68.7 extrusive
    - 68.71 carbonate (lava)
- 69. Kimberlite pipes (diamond pipes)
  - 69.1 alnoite (diamond-bearing, Kimberly, Australia)
- 70. Meta-ultramafic
  - 70.1 asbestos
  - 70.3 serpentine

- 75. Regional metamorphic
  - 75.2 aluminosilicate minerals
  - 75.3 marble
  - 75.7 graphite
  - 75.8 talc

**Production Code (2,3)**

System ID	PROD.CODE
Field Number	25
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Accepts Y, N, or U
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

A one character code describing the production history of the site or area:

Y = known production  
N = known to have not produced  
U = production history unknown.

**Production Description (2,4)**

System ID	PRODUCTION
Field Number	26
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

Enter all known information about the production history of the deposit or area. As much information as needed may be entered. Three lines are provided on the display screen; however, more information may be entered by continuing to type beyond the edge of the screen on each line. Although only three lines of information will be displayed on the screen, all of the information will be stored in the record and will be printed on output tables. Move to the next field by entering a blank line or by pressing the **RETURN** key on the third line.

**Host Rock Name (2,5)**

System ID	HR.NAME
Field Number	27
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

Enter the formal name(s) of the rock unit(s) which forms the principal host(s) for the deposit. Do not enter abbreviations such as Kmj! This is a multi-valued field; as many host rock names as are needed may be entered in this field. The system requests the corresponding lithology and age for each host rock named before returning to the **Host Rock Name** field. Use informal unit names only if formal names do not exist.

Examples: Leadville Limestone  
Sangre de Cristo Formation  
quartz diorite of Crystal Bay  
unnamed granite

**Host Lithology (2,6)**

System ID	HR.LITH
Field Number	28
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

A lithologic description of the rock unit which was named in the corresponding **Host Rock Name** field.

Examples: limestone  
two-mica granite  
hornblende-biotite-quartz-plagioclase gneiss

**Host Rock Age (2,7)**

System ID                   HR.AGE  
 Field Number               29  
 Field Type                 Multi-valued  
 Input Checking  
 Entry Required?           No  
 Default  
 Cross-reference?         No  
 Description:

Abbreviation(s) for the most specific geologic age(s) of the rock unit described in the corresponding **Host Rock Name** and **Host Lithology** fields. Either a single age or a range of ages may be entered. Please use the following abbreviations if possible:

**Geologic Age Abbreviations**

Cen	Cenozoic	Pal	Paleozoic
Quat	Quaternary	Perm	Permian
Holo	Holocene	Penn	Pennsylvanian
Pleis	Pleistocene	Carb	Carboniferous
Tert	Tertiary	Miss	Mississippian
Neo	Neogene	Dev	Devonian
Paleog	Paleogene	Sil	Silurian
Plio	Pliocene	Ord	Ordovician
Mio	Miocene	Camb	Cambrian
Oligo	Oligocene	Prec	Precambrian
Eo	Eocene	Prot	Proterozoic
Paleo	Paleocene	Arch	Archean
Mes	Mesozoic	E	Early
Cret	Cretaceous	M	Middle
Jur	Jurassic	L	Late
Tri	Triassic	?	inferred
		-	through
		,	and

Examples: Cret   Cret?  
           E Cret                                       Miss, Perm  
           E - M Cret  
           Penn - Perm  
           L Penn - M Perm

**Mineralization Age (2,8)**

System ID                   MINERAL.AGE  
 Field Number               30  
 Field Type                 Single-valued  
 Input Checking  
 Entry Required?           No  
 Default  
 Cross-reference?         No  
 Description:

Abbreviation(s) for the most specific geologic age(s) of the mineralization of the deposit or area being described. A single age or a range of ages may be entered. Please use the abbreviations given under **Host Rock Age**, p. 143.

Examples:	Cret	Cret?
	E Cret	Miss, Perm
	E - M Cret	
	Penn - Perm	
	L Penn - M Perm	

### Associated Igneous Rock Description (2,9)

System ID	ASSOC.ROCK
Field Number	31
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

A brief description of any igneous rock(s) genetically associated with the mineralization. Include formal name, if any, and lithology. This is a multi-valued field; any number of igneous rock descriptions may be entered. The system will prompt for the age of each rock described before returning to prompt for the next rock description.

**Associated Igneous Rock Age (2,10)**

System ID	ASSOC.AGE
Field Number	32
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

Enter abbreviation(s) for the most specific geologic age(s) of the associated igneous rock described in the previous field. A single age or a range of ages may be entered. Please use the abbreviations given under **Host Rock Age**, p. 143.

**Examples:**

Cret	Cret?
E Cret	
E - M Cret	
Penn - Perm	
L Penn - M Perm	

**Tectonic Setting (2,11)**

System ID	TECTONICS
Field Number	33
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

Enter a brief description of the tectonic setting of the site or area at the time the deposit was formed. As much information as needed may be entered. Four lines are provided on the display screen; however, more information may be entered by continuing to type beyond the edge of the screen on each line. Although only four lines of information will be displayed on the screen, all of the information will be stored in the record and will be printed on output tables. Move to the next field by entering a blank line or by pressing the **RETURN** key on the fourth line.

Examples: Island arc  
Stable North American continent

**Ore Minerals (3,3)**

System ID	ORE.MINERAL
Field Number	34
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	Yes
Description:	

Enter the complete name of all ore minerals known to occur at the site or area being described. This is a multi-valued field, enter as many mineral names as needed, one per space. If possible, list minerals in decreasing order of importance.

Examples: tetrahedrite  
chalcopyrite  
native silver

**Non-Ore Mineralogy (3,4)**

System ID	NONORE.MINERAL
Field Number	35
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

Enter a brief, but as complete as possible, description of the alteration, gangue, and other non-ore minerals associated with the mineralization at the location being described. As much information as needed may be entered. Four lines are provided on the display screen; however, more information may be entered by continuing to type beyond the edge of the screen on each line. Although only four lines of information will be displayed on the screen, all of the information will be stored in the record and will be printed on output tables. Move to the next field by entering a blank line or by pressing the **RETURN** key on the fourth line.

**Ore Controls (3,5)**

System ID	ORE.CONTROL
Field Number	36
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

Enter a brief description of the factors controlling mineralization, including structural, stratigraphic, chemical, or any other type of control. As much information as needed may be entered. Four lines are provided on the display screen; however, more information may be entered by continuing to type beyond the edge of the screen on each line. Although only four lines of information will be displayed on the screen, all of the information will be stored in the record and will be printed on output tables. Move to the next field by entering a blank line or by pressing the **RETURN** key from the fourth line.



**Deposit Description (3,6)**

System ID	DESCRIPTION
Field Number	37
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

Enter a general description of the deposit. Include any information concerning this deposit or area that does not seem to fit in any other field. As much information as needed may be entered. Four lines are provided on the display screen; however, more information may be entered by continuing to type beyond the edge of the screen on each line. Although only four lines of information will be displayed on the screen, all of the information will be stored in the record and will be printed on output tables. Move to the next field by entering a blank line or by pressing the **RETURN** key from the fourth line.

**Search Keys (4,3)**

System ID	KEY
Field Number	38
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	Yes
Description:	

This is a keyword field available for free use. It is intended to be a storage location for search and/or sort words or codes which are specific to an individual project or agency. This is a multi-valued field; as many items as necessary may be entered.

**Miscellaneous Comments (4,4)**

System ID	COMMENT
Field Number	39
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This is a general purpose text field for any information that does not fit in any other field. A good place for speculations (as opposed to facts entered in other fields)

concerning deposit origin, etc. As much information as needed may be entered. Three lines are provided on the display screen; however, more information may be entered by continuing to type beyond the edge of the screen on each line. Although only three lines of information will be displayed on the screen, all of the information will be stored in the record and will be printed on output records. Move to the next field by entering a blank line or by pressing the **RETURN** key on the third line.

#### **Personal or Proprietary Notes (4,5)**

System ID	NOTES
Field Number	40
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This is a memo field available for notes, comments, proprietary information, etc. that are not to be transferred out of the reporter's system. The information in this field is not transferred to any other system when files are moved. As much information as needed may be entered. Three lines are provided on the display screen; however, more information may be entered by continuing to type beyond the edge of the screen on each line. Although only three lines of information will be displayed on the screen, all of the information will be stored in the record and can be printed on output tables. Move to the next field by entering a blank line or by pressing the **RETURN** key from the third line.

#### **References (4,6)**

System ID	REF.NO
Field Number	41
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Entry must exist as a reference number in the Reference database
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	Yes
Description:	

Enter into this field the reference number(s) of the reference(s) used to compile the data in the current record. If the reference has not been previously added to the Reference database, entering an **a** instead of a number will bring up the Reference entry screen so that the complete reference can be added. References should be entered in standard format and must be complete. Each reference will be assigned a number and need be entered into the system only once.

This is a multi-valued field; as many references as necessary may be entered. Only integers corresponding to existing references in the reference file or the letter a will be accepted in this field. As each number is entered, the system displays the first line of the corresponding reference so that the user can check to see that it is the correct entry.

**MRDS Number**

System ID	MRDS.NO
Field Number	1
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This is the number assigned to the data record by the USGS National MRDS system. The field only contains a number if the record has been downloaded from the MRDS system. The number is carried with the record so that the MRDS record can be easily updated from GSMODS. This field is not accessible from the entry screen by the user and should not be modified by the user in any way.

**CMR Number**

System ID	CMR.NO
Field Number	2
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This is the number assigned to the data record by the USGS Branch of Central Mineral Resources (CMR) system. The field only contains a number if the record has been downloaded from the CMR system. The number is carried with the record so that the CMR record can be easily updated from GSMODS. This field is not accessible from the entry screen by the user and should not be modified by the user in any way.

## Appendix VI. REFERENCE DATABASE

### MD.REF field names:

REC.NO	Record number of reference
AUTH.NAME	Author names list
REF.DATE	Date of reference
REF.CIT	Remainder of citation

### MD.REF Field Descriptions

(prompt name is followed by prompt number)

### Reference No. (1)

System ID	REC.NO
Field Number	0
Field Type	Key
Input Checking	Must be an integer between 1 and 9999
Entry Required?	Yes
Default	Next available empty record number
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a four digit, sequential reference number that is assigned by the system each time a new reference is added to the database. The reference number is stored in each Locality data record in the place of the complete reference. The reference number must be an integer between 1 and 9999. To enter a new reference, press the **RETURN** key. To edit an existing reference, enter the reference number.

Existing records may also be retrieved (and edited) by entering a search parameter instead of a record number. For more information on cross-referencing techniques, see the discussion in Chapter 5.

### Fields which can be cross-referenced:

Field Prompt	System ID
Authors	AUTH.NAME
Citation	REF.CIT

**Authors (2)**

System ID	AUTH.NAME
Field Number	2
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	Yes
Default	
Cross-reference?	Yes
Description:	

This field contains the names of the authors in standard citation format. Do not enter a comma following the last author name. As many authors as needed may be entered. Three lines are provided on the display screen; however, more information may be entered by continuing to type beyond the edge of the screen on each line. Although only three lines of information will be displayed on the screen, all of the information will be stored in the record and will be printed on output tables. Move to the next field by entering a blank line or by pressing the **RETURN** key from the third line.

**Example:**

Broadhead, G. C., Meek, F. B., and Shumard, B. F.

**Reference Year (3)**

System ID	REF.DATE
Field Number	3
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must be integer between 1000 and 2050 plus optional suffix
Entry Required?	Yes
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the year in which the reference was published. A suffix is allowed, but should be used with caution. Acceptable values are 1000 through 2050. Do not enter any punctuation other than square braces. Standard Survey format for publications with a cover date which differs from the actual year of publication is: 1943[1944].

Examples: 1896  
1986a  
1983[1985]

**Citation (4)**

System ID	REF.CIT
Field Number	4
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	Yes
Description:	

This field contains the remainder of the citation (title, publication information, pages, scale, etc.) in standard format. As much information as needed may be entered. Four lines are provided on the display screen; however, more information may be entered by continuing to type beyond the edge of the screen on each line. Although only four lines of information will be displayed on the screen, all of the information will be stored in the record and will be printed on output tables. Move to the Change prompt by entering a blank line or by pressing the **RETURN** key from the fourth line.

**Example:**

The iron ores of Missouri: Missouri Bureau of Geology and Mines, 2nd series, v. 10, 434 p.

## Appendix VII. REPORTER DATABASE

### MD.USER field names:

USER.INIT	Reporter's initials
USER.FNAME	Reporter's given names
USER.LNAME	Reporter's last name
USER.AFFIL	Reporter's affiliation
USER.STATE	Default state for data records
USER.COUNTRY	Default country for data records

### MD.USER Field Descriptions

(prompt name is followed by prompt number)

#### Reporter's Initials (1)

System ID	USER.INIT
Field Number	0
Field Type	Key
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	Yes
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

The reporter's initials are used as the record key to the file containing the fixed information for each reporter. Initials may be entered in either upper- or lowercase. Initials are used as a convenient way of retrieving the information on this screen for editing.

Existing records may also be retrieved (and edited) by entering a search parameter instead of the reporter's initials. For more information on cross-referencing techniques, see the discussion in Chapter 5. The only field which can be cross-referenced in this database is the **Last Name** field.

**Given Names (2)**

System ID	USER.FNAME
Field Number	1
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	Yes
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

Enter all given names and initials for the reporter in their proper order. Enter the name exactly as it should appear on the data record with the last name left off. The system will concatenate the reporter's given names, last name, and affiliation and enter that information in each data record as it is created.

Example: Jerry H.

**Last Name (3)**

System ID	USER.LNAME
Field Number	2
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	Yes
Default	
Cross-reference?	Yes
Description:	

Enter into this field the reporter's last name only. Do not enter any other names or initials. If the last name is hyphenated or multi-part, enter the entire last name. The reporter's last name is added to each data record as it is created.

Examples: Miller  
Giovanni-Ivanovitch  
von Neumann



**Affiliation (4)**

System ID	USER.AFFIL
Field Number	3
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	Yes
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

Enter the affiliation of the reporter into this field. The use of abbreviations is not recommended. The reporter's affiliation is added to each data record as it is created.

**State (5)**

System ID	USER.STATE
Field Number	4
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must be valid USPS state code
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

Enter the U.S. Postal Service abbreviation for the state in which the reporter normally works. The state code is copied to each Locality record as it is created. A list of valid state codes is given in description of the **State** field for the Locality database and in Chapter 8, Quick Reference. Changing valid state codes is discussed in Appendix I, The States database.

**Country (6)**

System ID	USER.COUNTRY
Field Number	5
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

Enter the name of the country in which the reporter normally works. The information in this field is copied to each Locality data record as it is created. Abbreviations should only be entered if they will be obvious to any subsequent user.

Examples: U.S.A.  
Canada  
New Zealand

## Appendix VIII. AREA OUTLINE DATABASE

### MD.AREA field names:

RECORD	Record number
LATITUDE	List of latitudes
LONGITUDE	List of longitudes

### MD.AREA Field Descriptions

#### Record Number

System ID	RECORD
Field Number	0
Field Type	Key
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	Yes
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a five digit number which corresponds to the record number of the Locality database record that contains the rest of the information about the locality. The record number must be an integer between 1 and 99999.

#### Latitude

System ID	LATITUDE
Field Number	1
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	Yes
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This is a multi-valued field containing a list of latitude values which make up the outline of the locality. Latitude values are stored as decimal degrees with a resolution of 0.0001 degrees. Values are stored in the order in which the outline will be plotted. For closed outlines, the first latitude is repeated at the end of the outline to be sure the outline closes exactly. To create multiple outlines in the same record, a dummy latitude of 100° is entered by the digitizing program as a flag to the plot program to start a new line. The dummy latitude causes the plotter to raise the pen before moving to the next point.

**Longitude**

System ID	LONGITUDE
Field Number	2
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	Yes
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This is a multi-valued field containing a list of longitude values which make up the outline of the locality. Longitude values are stored as decimal degrees with a resolution of 0.0001 degrees. Values are stored in the order in which the outline will be plotted. For closed outlines, the first longitude is repeated at the end of the outline to be sure the outline closes exactly. To create multiple outlines in the same record, a dummy longitude of 0° is entered by the digitizing program as a flag to the plot program to start a new line.

## Appendix IX. SYSTEM SETUP DATABASE

### MD.SYS field names:

SYS.REC.NO	Record number in configuration file
SYS.DISP.TYPE	Type of display in use
SYS.COL.NORM	Code for display color of normal type
SYS.COL.REV	Code for display color of reversed type
SYS.COL.HI	Code for display color of highlighted type
SYS.COL.HIREV	Code for display color of reverse highlight
SYS.PRINT.PORT	Printer port number
SYS.PRINT.WIDTH	Printer width, in characters
SYS.PRINT.COMM	Printer communications parameters
SYS.DIGIT.TYPE	Type of digitizer in use
SYS.DIGIT.PORT	Communications port to use for digitizing
SYS.DIGIT.SPEED	Communications speed for digitizer
SYS.PLOT.TYPE	Type of plotter in use
SYS.PLOT.PORT	Communications port to use for plotting
SYS.PLOT.SPEED	Communications speed for plotter
SYS.COMMENTS	Configuration description

### Color Choices

There are four fields in the following descriptions which allow the user to select a color for a particular type of information display. The set of acceptable choices is the same for each of the fields and depends on whether the display adapter is monochrome (MDA - no graphics) or color (including color emulation modes). Users with non-IBM systems will have to experiment to see which set of codes works best.

### Acceptable Monochrome Codes:

Acceptable monochrome codes consist of a single character which specifies a foreground/background combination. White in the following descriptions refers to the bright color of the monitor whether it is green, amber, blue, white, or whatever.

- 1 = Black letters on white background
- 2 = Blinking light gray letters on white background
- 3 = Blinking black letters on bright white background
- 4 = Bright white letters on white background
- 8 = Light gray letters on white background
- D = Dark gray letters on black background
- H = Bright white letters on black background
- I = White letters on black background
- O = Blinking black letters on light gray background

**Acceptable Color Codes:**

Acceptable color codes consist of two characters, the first character specifies the background color and the second character specifies the foreground color. Any of the following characters can be entered for either background or foreground color:

1 = Dark Blue	I = Light Blue
2 = Dark Green	J = Light Green
3 = Dark Cyan	K = Light Cyan
4 = Dark Red	L = Light Red
5 = Dark Magenta	M = Light Magenta
6 = Brown	N = Yellow
7 = Light Gray	8 = Dark Gray
P = Black	/ = White

**MD.SYS Field Descriptions**

(prompt name is followed by prompt number)

**Record No. (1)**

System ID	SYS.REC.NO
Field Number	0
Field Type	Key
Input Checking	Must be an integer between 1 and 99
Entry Required?	Yes
Default	1
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a one or two digit, sequential, record number. The record number must be an integer between 1 and 99. To enter a new record, enter a new record number. To edit an existing record, enter the record number.

Record number 1 is the record the system will use for initialization the first time it is started. Provision is made for additional records so that the system may be re-initialized to different settings without having to re-enter the information each time the configuration is changed. Calling up a record by entering its number at this prompt and then exiting by pressing the **RETURN** key at the Change prompt and entering **END** at the **Record No.** prompt will reset the system variables to the values of the last record accessed. Each time it is started, the system will use the most recently accessed record for initialization.

**Display Type (2)**

System ID	SYS.DISP.TYPE
Field Number	7
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes given below
Entry Required?	No
Default	MDA
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a code corresponding to the type of display controller which is used by the system. At the present time, EGA and PGC controllers operate in CGA emulation mode, so there is no difference between the three color controller choices. Acceptable entries into this field are:

MDA = Monochrome Display Adapter  
CGA = Color Graphics Adapter  
EGA = Enhanced Graphics Adapter  
PGC = Professional Graphics Controller

**Normal Text Color (3)**

System ID	SYS.COL.NORM
Field Number	8
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	See Color Choice section, p. 158
Entry Required?	No
Default	I for MDA, 17 for color display
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a code for the color to display normal text on the screen. This is the code that is used to display prompts on all entry screens. See section on Color Choices, p. 158.

Default Monochrome Code = I (White letters on black background)  
Default Color Code = 17 (Light gray letters on dark blue background)

**Reverse Text Color (4)**

System ID	SYS.COL.REV
Field Number	9
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	See Color Choice, p. 158
Entry Required?	No
Default	1 for MDA, 3N for color display
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a code for the color to display reverse video text on the screen. This is the code that is used by some of the system programs to display a status line at the bottom of the screen. See section on Color Choices, p. 158.

Default Monochrome Code = 1	(Black letters on white background)
Default Color Code = 3N	(Yellow letters on dark cyan background)

**Highlight Text Color (5)**

System ID	SYS.COL.HI
Field Number	10
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	See Color Choice, p. 158
Entry Required?	No
Default	H for MDA, 1N for color display
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a code for the color to display highlighted text on the screen. This is the code that is used to display data on all entry screens. See section on Color Choices, p. 158.

Default Monochrome Code = H	(Bright white letters on black background)
Default Color Code = 1N	(Yellow letters on dark blue background)

**Reverse Highlighted Text Color (6)**

System ID	SYS.COL.HIREV
Field Number	11
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	See Color Choice, p. 158
Entry Required?	No
Default	4 for MDA, 4M for color display
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a code for the color to display reverse, highlighted text on the screen. See section on Color Choices, p. 158.

Default Monochrome Code = 4	(Bright white letters on white background)
Default Color Code = 4M	(Light magenta letters on dark red background)

**Printer Port (7)**

System ID	SYS.PRINT.PORT
Field Number	13
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes given below
Entry Required?	No
Default	1
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains an integer which specifies which port is used to attach the printer. Valid printer port codes are:

1 = LPT1:	11 = COM1:
2 = LPT2:	12 = COM2:
3 = LPT3:	
4 = LPT4:	

**Printer Comm. Parameters (8)**

System ID	SYS.PRINT.COMM
Field Number	15
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes given below
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the codes necessary to setup the communications port if the printer is attached to a serial port. Information required includes the baud rate, parity, number of



data bits, and number of stop bits, in that order. Each part of the specification must be separated by commas. Defaults for each part of the specification except the baud rate can be used by just entering the comma. The minimum entry contains a baud rate followed by three commas. This information is ignored if the printer is attached to a parallel port.

**Examples:** 1200,N,8,1  
9600,N,,  
300,,,1

### Acceptable Values for Baud Rate:

110      150      300      600      1200      2400      4800      9600

Parity: N (none), O (odd), or E (even)                      Default = E

Data bits: 7 or 8 Default = 7

[illegible]

## Printer Width (9)

System ID	SYS.PRINT.WIDTH
Field Number	12
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must be an integer between 10 and 300
Entry Required?	No
Default	80
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains an integer specifying the number of characters which can be printed on each line with the printer set in its default mode. This field is included to prevent the system from attempting to print beyond the edge of the paper when normal listings are sent to the printer. Normal settings are 80 for 8 1/2 inch wide paper and 132 for 14 inch wide paper.

## Digitizer Type (10)

System ID	SYS.DIGIT.TYPE
Field Number	4
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes given below
Entry Required?	No
Default	1
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains an integer which identifies the type of digitizer which is connected to the system. At present, the

system supports GTCO digitizers and other brands which can emulate the GTCO data format.

Acceptable entries:

- 1 = GTCO Digi-Pad-5, any size
- 2 = Digitizers which can emulate the GTCO, including:  
Calcomp 9000 or 9100 with "Universal Formatter Option"

#### Digitizer Comm. Port (11)

System ID	SYS.DIGIT.PORT
Field Number	6
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes given below
Entry Required?	No
Default	2
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains an integer corresponding to the communications port which is connected to the digitizer. Valid entries in this field are:

- 1 = COM1:
- 2 = COM2:

#### Digitizer Comm. Speed (12)

System ID	SYS.DIGIT.SPEED
Field Number	5
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes given below
Entry Required?	No
Default	1200
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

Enter the baud rate at which the computer and digitizer communicate. All digitizer communications use 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, and no parity. Valid entries into this field are:

300    600    1200    1800    2400    3600    4800    7200    9600

**Plotter Type (13)**

System ID	SYS.PLOT.TYPE
Field Number	1
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes given below
Entry Required?	No
Default	1
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains an integer which defines the type of plotter being used with the system. Plotters which are currently supported by the system are:

1 = Hewlett-Packard 74xx series, 75xx series

**Plotter Comm. Port (14)**

System ID	SYS.PLOT.PORT
Field Number	3
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes given below
Entry Required?	No
Default	1
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains an integer corresponding to the system communications port which is connected to the plotter. Acceptable port codes are:

1 = COM1:  
2 = COM2:

**Plotter Comm. Speed (15)**

System ID	SYS.PLOT.SPEED
Field Number	2
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes given below
Entry Required?	No
Default	4800
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

Enter the baud rate at which the computer and plotter communicate. All plotter communications use 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, and no parity. Acceptable baud rates are:

300    600    1200    1800    2400    3600    4800    7200    9600

NOTE: Communications may be unreliable at speeds greater than 4800 baud with this software and some plotters.

**Comments (16)**

System ID	SYS.COMMENTS
Field Number	16
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field is used for miscellaneous comments that the user desires to include with the System Setup entry screen. Normally it is used for reminders of the use of this particular setup screen. As much information as desired may be entered in this field. Although only one line of information is displayed on the screen, more information can be entered by continuing to type beyond the edge of the screen. All of the information is stored in the record and is available for output.

## Appendix X. REPORT PARAMETER DATABASE

### MD.REPORT field names:

REPORT	Name of the report being defined
COMMENT	User comments
MAX	Maximum number of records to output
PAGE	Controls page breaks within records
OUT	Controls where output is sent
NCOL	Number of characters per line
NLINE	Number of lines per page
PRINT.IN	Printer initialization string
PRINT.OUT	Printer reset string
TITLE	Title of report
TITLE.REP	Controls pages where title is output
TITLE.FOR	Controls title format
SP1	Controls separator following title
HEAD	Head note
HEAD.REP	Controls pages where head note is output
HEAD.FOR	Controls head note format
SP2	Controls separator following head note
FOOT	Report footer
FOOT.REP	Controls pages where footer is output
FOOT.FOR	Controls footer format
CHEAD	Column header text
CHEAD.REP	Controls pages where column header is output
SP3	Controls separator following column header
MAJ.SEL	Selects records for output from MD.DATA
MAJ	Field name for major section sort
MAJ.TITLE	Title for major section
MAJ.TITLE.FOR	Controls major section title format
SP4	Controls separator following major title
MAJ.HEAD	Head note for major section
MAJ.HEAD.FOR	Controls major section head note format
SP5	Controls separator following major head note
MAJ.HEAD.SEL	Record for major title and head note inserts
MAJ.FOOT	Foot note for major section
MAJ.FOOT.SEL	Selects records for major footer inserts
MAJ.FOOT.FOR	Controls major section footer format
SP10	Controls separator following major footer
MIN	Field name for sort within major section
MIN.TITLE	Title for individual record
MIN.TITLE.FOR	Controls format of record title
SP6	Controls separator following record title
MIN.HEAD	Head note for individual record
MIN.HEAD.FOR	Controls format of record head note
SP7	Controls separator following record header
DET.FN	Field name(s) to include in record column
DET.COL	Starting position for record column
DET.WIDTH	Width of record column
DET.FOR	Controls format of record column
DET.MV	Controls selection of multi-values for column
SP8	Controls separator following record
MIN.FOOT	Foot note for individual record
MIN.FOOT.FOR	Controls format of record foot note

SP9                      Controls separator following record footer  
 DET.SEL                Controls printing of district records

**MD.REPORT Field Descriptions**

(prompt name is followed by screen number and prompt number)

**Report Name (1,1)**

System ID	REPORT
Field Number	0
Field Type	Key
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	Yes
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the name of the report which is being defined by the current record. To create a new report definition, enter a new name. To edit an existing report definition, enter the existing report name. Names may be any mix of upper- and lowercase alphanumeric characters. The name is case sensitive, so that test and TEST are two different names. Do not include spaces or punctuation marks in the report name. If a two word name is required, separate words with a hyphen or underscore.

Examples: Paducah  
           REP1  
           test\_plot

Existing records may also be retrieved (and edited) by entering a search parameter instead of a report name. For more information on cross-referencing techniques, see the discussion in Chapter 5.

Fields which can be cross-referenced:

Field Prompt	System ID
Comments	COMMENT
Title of Report	TITLE

**Comments (1,2)**

System ID	COMMENT
Field Number	1
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	Yes
Description:	

This field contains a description of the report which is defined by this record. The description is strictly a convenience for the user and is not used by the system in generating the report. Use it as a reminder of the format or purpose of this report. This is a text field which may contain a description of any length.

**Max. Records (1,3)**

System ID	MAX
Field Number	48
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must be an integer
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains an integer which specifies the maximum number of records to output. It is used primarily for testing the Report Parameters. Leave this field blank to select all of the records in the data file which meet the selection criteria.

Example: 10

**Page Break w/i Record (1,4)**

System ID	PAGE
Field Number	51
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must be "Y" or "N"
Entry Required?	No
Default	Y
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a single character which determines whether page breaks will occur within a record (Y) or only at record breaks (N). Acceptable entries for this field are **y** or **Y** if breaks within records are desired, or **n** or **N** if breaks within records are not desired. The default is to allow page breaks within records (Y).

Examples: Y  
N

#### Output Device (1,5)

System ID	OUT
Field Number	45
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must be "P", "S", or "F"
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a single character which determines which output device is to be used for the report. Enter a **P** or **p** if the output is to be sent to the default printer (as defined in the System Setup database). Enter an **S** or **s** if the output is to be sent to the computer terminal screen. Enter an **F** or **f** if the output is to be sent to a disk file. If file output is selected, the report generation program will request a file name at the time the report is generated.

Example: F

#### Char. per Line (1,6)

System ID	NCOL
Field Number	46
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must be an integer between 1 and 500
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains an integer which specifies the maximum number of characters of text which can be put on a single line of the output device. If this field is left blank, the system defaults to 80 characters per line.

Examples: 80  
132



**Line per Page (1,7)**

System ID	NLINE
Field Number	47
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must be an integer between 1 and 300
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains an integer which specifies the number of text lines to be output per page on the output device. If this field is left blank, the system defaults to 66 lines per page.

Example: 88

**Printer Init (1,8)**

System ID	PRINT.IN
Field Number	49
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a string which is used to initialize the output device; it is usually used to set a printer to smaller type or a different font. Each character to be sent to the output device is specified by its decimal ASCII equivalent. Each ASCII character number is separated by a comma. The string can be as long as necessary; multiple commands can be sent to the output device in a single string. Control code sequences are found in the user manual for each output device.

Examples: 27,65,9

(ASCII 27 is the ESC character, ASCII 65 is an A. On some printers, the string: ESC A 9 will set the line spacing to 9/72" or 8 lines per inch)

27,65,9,15,27,88,1

(On some printers, this string will set the line spacing to 8 lines per inch, set the pitch to 17 characters per inch, and turn correspondence quality printing on)

**Printer Reset (1,9)**

System ID	PRINT.OUT
Field Number	50
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a string which is used to reset the output device; it is usually used to set a printer back to the default type size or font. Each character to be sent to the output device is specified by its decimal ASCII equivalent. Each ASCII character number is separated by a comma. The string can be as long as necessary; multiple commands can be sent to the output device in a single string. Control code sequences are found in the user manual for each output device.

Examples: 27,65,12

(ASCII 27 is the ESC character, ASCII 65 is an A. On some printers, the string: ESC A 12 will set the line spacing to 12/72" or 6 lines per inch)

27,65,12,18,27,88,0

(On some printers, this string will set the line spacing to 6 lines per inch, set the pitch to 10 characters per inch, and turn correspondence quality printing off)

**Title of Report (1,10)**

System ID	TITLE
Field Number	2
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	Yes
Description:	

This is a multi-valued field which contains the title of the report. Each value in this field describes a line of the title. Each line of the title can be printed at the top of each page of the report or only at the top of the first page or of the last page of the report (see **Title Repeat** field). The date and/or page number can be included in any line of the title by using the |key| syntax (see Chapter 6). Each line of the title can be formatted individually (see **Title Format** field).

**Examples:**

This is the first title example

(A simple title containing a text string to be printed at the top of the page)

Title with a page number and date:   page |PN|   date |DT|

(|PN| causes the current page number to be inserted in the title; |DT| causes the current system date to be inserted)

**Title Repeat (1,11)**

System ID	TITLE.REP
Field Number	3
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes in Chapter 6
Entry Required?	No
Default	All pages
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field is used to determine on which pages to print each line of the title of the report. See Page Repeating, Chapter 6.

**Title Format (1,12)**

System ID	TITLE.FOR
Field Number	4
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes in Chapter 6
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field is used to format the associated title line. If this field is left blank, the title line will be left-justified in column 1. See Line Formatting, Chapter 6.

**Title Sep (1,13)**

System ID	SP1
Field Number	5
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes in Chapter 6
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a string which is used to control what is output after the title. See **Separators**, Chapter 6.

**Head Note (1,14)**

System ID	HEAD
Field Number	6
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a head note to be printed below the title (if any) on each page of the report or only on the first or last page of the report (see **Head Repeat** field). The date and/or page number can be included in the head note by using the `|key|` syntax (see Chapter 6).

**Examples:**

This is the first head note example

(A simple head note containing a text string to be printed at the top of the page)

Head note with a page number and date:    page `|PN|`    date `|DT|`

(`|PN|` causes the current page number to be inserted in the head note; `|DT|` causes the current system date to be inserted)

**Head Repeat (1,15)**

System ID	HEAD.REP
Field Number	7
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes in Chapter 6
Entry Required?	No
Default	All pages
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field is used to determine on which pages to print the head note of the report. See Page Repeating, Chapter 6.

**Head Format (1,16)**

System ID	HEAD.FOR
Field Number	8
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes in Chapter 6
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field is used to format the head note. If this field is left blank, the head note will be left-justified in column 1. See Line Formatting, Chapter 6.

**Head Sep (1,17)**

System ID	SP2
Field Number	9
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes in Chapter 6
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a string which is used to control what is output after the head note. See Separators, Chapter 6.

**Page Footer (1,18)**

System ID	FOOT
Field Number	42
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This is a multi-valued field which contains the footer of the report. Each value in this field describes a line of the footer. Each line of the footer can be printed at the bottom of each page of the report, only at the bottom of the first page of the report, or only at the bottom of the last page of the report (see **Foot Repeat** field). The date and/or page number can be included in any line of the footer by using the |key| syntax (see Chapter 6). Each line of the footer can be formatted individually (see **Foot Format** field).

**Examples:**

This is the first footer example

(A simple footer containing a text string to be printed at the bottom of the page)

Footer with a page number and date:    page |PN|    date |DT|

(|PN| causes the current page number to be inserted in the footer; |DT| causes the current system date to be inserted)

**Foot Repeat (1,19)**

System ID	FOOT.REP
Field Number	43
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes in Chapter 6
Entry Required?	No
Default	All pages
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field is used to determine on which pages to print each line of the footer of the report. See Page Repeating, Chapter 6.

**Foot Format (1,20)**

System ID	FOOT.FOR
Field Number	44
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes in Chapter 6
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field is used to format a footer line. If this field is left blank, the footer line will be left-justified in column 1. See Line Formatting, Chapter 6.

**Column Header (1,21)**

System ID	CHEAD
Field Number	10
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This is a multi-valued field which contains the column header of the report. Each value in this field describes a line of the column header. Each line of the column header can be printed below the title and header (if any) on each page of the report or only on the first page of the report (see **Column Head Repeat** field). The date and/or page number can be included in any line of the column header by using the |key| syntax (see Chapter 6).

**Examples:**

This is the first column header example

(A simple column header containing only a text string)

Site      State|R10, |County|R20, |Commodities

(|R10, | causes 10 spaces to be inserted in the column header);

**Col. Head Repeat (1,22)**

System ID	CHEAD.REP
Field Number	11
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes in Chapter 6
Entry Required?	No
Default	All pages
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field is used to determine on which pages to print each line of the column header of the report. See Page Repeating, Chapter 6.

**Col. Head Sep. (1,23)**

System ID	SP3
Field Number	12
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes in Chapter 6
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a string which is used to control what is output after the column header. See Separators, Chapter 6.

**Selection Criteria (1,24)**

System ID	MAJ.SEL
Field Number	13
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains criteria for selecting the set of records to be used to create the report. Criteria may be composed of single "WITH" clauses such as: **WITH COUNTY EQ "Pueblo"**, or more complicated boolean expressions (see Chapter 6, section on Selection Criteria). Do not include "BY" clauses in the selection criteria. See **Major Sort Field** and **Minor Sort Field**, p. 179 and 184, for descriptions of sorting the database. Field names (System ID) can be found on the individual help screens as well as in these descriptions. Leaving this field blank will select all records.

Examples: WITH STATE EQ "CO"  
WITH REC.TYPE EQ "SM" AND WITH COUNTY EQ "Hillside"



**Major Sort Field (1,25)**

System ID	MAJ
Field Number	14
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must be valid MD.DATA field name
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the name of the field in the data file to be used for the primary sort of the data records. Entry must be a valid MD.DATA dictionary field name. Field names (System ID) can be found on the individual help screens as well as in the field descriptions in Appendix V. Changes in the value of this field cause a major section change in the report. The selected records (see **Selection Criteria** field) are first sorted by the **Major Sort** field. Then within each major section, the records are sorted by the **Minor Sort** field. Each set of records with the same value in the **Major Sort** field is output with an accompanying major title, header, and footer, if requested, before the next set is output.

Examples: COUNTY  
2DEG.QUAD  
DISTRICT

**Major Section Title (2,2)**

System ID	MAJ.TITLE
Field Number	15
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a major section title to be printed at the beginning of each major section of the report. Major sections are determined by changes in the value of the **Major Section Sort** field. Information from any field or combination of fields from a data record can be included in the major section title by using the |key| syntax (see Chapter 6).

Examples:

This is the first major section title example

(A simple major section title containing a text string to be output at the beginning of each major section)

|DESCRIPTION|    |PRODUCTION|

(|fieldname| causes the contents of the specified field to be inserted in the major section title)

### Major Title Format (2,3)

System ID	MAJ.TITLE.FOR
Field Number	16
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes in Chapter 6
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field is used to format the major title. If this field is left blank, the major title will be left-justified in column 1. See Line Formatting, Chapter 6.

### Major Title Sep (2,4)

System ID	SP4
Field Number	17
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes in Chapter 6
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a string which is used to control what is output after the major title. See Separators, Chapter 6.

### Major Section Header (2,5)

System ID	MAJ.HEAD
Field Number	18
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a major section header to be output after the major section title (if any) for each major section of the report. Major sections are determined by changes in the value of the **Major Section Sort** field. Information from any field or combination of fields from a data record can be included in the major section header by using the |key| syntax (see Chapter 6). This is a multi-valued field. Each value is formatted separately and output to the line immediately following

the last line of the previous value.

### Examples:

This is the first major section header example

(A simple major section header containing a text string)

```
|DESCRIPTION|  |PRODUCTION|
```

(|fieldname| causes the contents of the specified field to be inserted in the major section header)

### Major Header Format (2,6)

System ID	MAJ.HEAD.FOR
Field Number	20
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes in Chapter 6
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field is used to format the major section header. If this field is left blank, the major section header will be left-justified in column 1. See Line Formatting, Chapter 6.

### Major Header Sep (2,7)

System ID	SP5
Field Number	21
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes in Chapter 6
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a string which is used to control what is output after the major section header. See Separators, Chapter 6.

**Major Title/Header Sel Criteria (2,8)**

System ID	MAJ.HEAD.SEL
Field Number	19
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains criteria for selecting a record to be used to retrieve data to insert in the major section title and header if the |key| syntax is used in those fields. Criteria may be composed of single "WITH" clauses such as: WITH REC.TYPE EQ "AM", or more complicated boolean expressions (see Chapter 6, section on Selection Criteria). Do not include "BY" clauses in the selection criteria. Field names (System ID) can be found on the individual help screens as well as in Appendix V. The record selected will be the first record in the sorted major section which meets the selection criteria. Thus, leaving this field blank will select the first record in the major section.

Examples: WITH REC.TYPE EQ "AM"  
WITH REC.TYPE EQ "AM" AND WITH COUNTY EQ "Hillside"

**Major Section Footer (2,9)**

System ID	MAJ.FOOT
Field Number	38
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a major section footer to be printed at the end of each major section of the report. Major sections are determined by changes in the value of the **Major Section Sort** field. Information from any field or combination of fields from a data record can be included in the major section footer by using the |key| syntax (see Chapter 6). This is a multi-valued field. Each entry in this field is formatted separately and is output on the line immediately following the previous entry.

Examples:

This is the first major section footer example

(A simple major section footer containing a text string)

DESCRIPTION	PRODUCTION
-------------	------------

(|fieldname| causes the contents of the specified field to be inserted in the major section footer)

### Major Footer Selection Criteria (2,10)

System ID	MAJ.FOOT.SEL
Field Number	40
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains criteria for selecting a record to be used to retrieve data to insert in the major footer if the |key| syntax is used in the footer field. Criteria may be composed of "WITH" clauses such as: WITH REC.TYPE EQ "AM", or more complicated boolean expressions (see Chapter 6, section on Selection Criteria). Do not include "BY" clauses in the selection criteria. Field names (System ID) can be found on the individual help screens as well as in Appendix V. The record selected will be the first record in the sorted major section which meets the selection criteria. Thus, leaving this field blank will select the first record in the major section.

Examples: WITH REC.TYPE EQ "AM"  
 WITH REC.TYPE EQ "AM" AND WITH COUNTY EQ "Hillside"

### Major Footer Format (2,11)

System ID	MAJ.FOOT.FOR
Field Number	39
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes in Chapter 6
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field is used to format the major section footer. If this field is left blank, the major section footer will be left-justified in column 1. See Line Formatting, Chapter 6.

**Major Footer Sep (2,12)**

System ID	SP10
Field Number	41
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes in Chapter 6
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a string which is used to control what is output after the major section footer. See Separators, Chapter 6.

**Minor Sort Field (2,13)**

System ID	MIN
Field Number	22
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must be valid MD.DATA field name
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the name of the field in the Locality data record to be used for sorting the records within each major section. Entry must be a valid MD.DATA dictionary field name. Field names (System ID) can be found on the individual help screens as well as in the field descriptions in Appendix V. The selected records (see **Selection Criteria** field) are first sorted by the **Major Sort** field. Then within each major section, the records are sorted by the **Minor Sort** field. Each record is output with an accompanying minor title, header, and footer (if requested).

Examples: SITE  
          RECORD

**Minor Title (2,14)**

System ID	MIN.TITLE
Field Number	23
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a multi-valued record title to be printed at the beginning of each new record of the report.

Information from any field or combination of fields from the data record can be included in the record title by using the |key| syntax (see Chapter 6).

**Examples:**

This is the first record title example

(A simple record title containing a text string to be output at the beginning of each record)

|SITE|, |COUNTY| County, |STATE|

(|fieldname| causes the contents of the specified field to be inserted in the record title)

**Minor Title Format (2,15)**

System ID	MIN.TITLE.FOR
Field Number	24
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes in Chapter 6
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field is used to format the record title. If this field is left blank, the record title will be left-justified in column 1. See Line Formatting, Chapter 6.

**Minor Title Sep (2,16)**

System ID	SP6
Field Number	25
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes in Chapter 6
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a string which is used to control what is output after the record title. See Separators, Chapter 6.

**Minor Header (2,17)**

System ID	MIN.HEAD
Field Number	26
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a record header to be printed below the record title, if any, and before each record. Information from any field or combination of fields from the data record can be included in the record header by using the `|key|` syntax (see Chapter 6).

**Examples:**

This is the first record header example

(A simple record header containing a text string to be output at the beginning of each major section)

```
|DESCRIPTION|  |PRODUCTION|
```

(`|fieldname|` causes the contents of the specified field to be inserted in the record header)

**Minor Header Format (2,18)**

System ID	MIN.HEAD.FOR
Field Number	27
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes in Chapter 6
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field is used to format the record header. If this field is left blank, the record header will be left-justified in column 1. See Line Formatting, Chapter 6.



**Minor Header Sep (2,19)**

System ID	SP7
Field Number	28
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes in Chapter 6
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a string which is used to control what is output after the record header. See Separators, Chapter 6.

**Column Fieldnames (3,2)**

System ID	DET.FN
Field Number	29
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must be valid MD.DATA field names
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This is a multi-valued field which contains the name(s) of the field(s) in the Locality data records to be used for creating each column of the data record. Each entry in this field controls the contents of one column of the data record. Entries must be valid MD.DATA dictionary field names. Field names (System ID) can be found on the individual help screens as well as in the field descriptions in Appendix V. More than one field may be included in each column by separating the field names by commas. Each field in a single column is separately formatted (see **Column Format** field), and each starts on a new line within the column.

Examples: SITE  
LATITUDE, LONGITUDE  
COMMODITIES

**Start Character No. (3,3)**

System ID	DET.COL
Field Number	30
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must be an integer between 1 and 500
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains an integer specifying the starting

character position on the output line for this column of the data record. This entry must be an integer.

Example: 25

### Column Width (3,4)

System ID	DET.WIDTH
Field Number	31
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must be an integer between 1 and 500
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains an integer which specifies the number of character positions to be used for this column of the data record.

Examples: 20

### Column Format (3,5)

System ID	DET.FOR
Field Number	32
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes listed below
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field is used to format a data column. If this field is left blank, the data column will be left-justified in the first character position for the column (see **Start Character No.** field). All formatting for data columns is done within the defined column. Therefore, all positions for justifications and word-wrap are measured from the defined boundaries of the column, not from the beginning of the output line! Options are:

C	Center the data within the column
Ln	Left-justify the data within the column starting in position <b>n</b>
Rn	Right-justify the data within the column <b>n</b> positions from the right edge of the data column
Wn,m,i	Word-wrap the data between positions <b>n</b> and <b>m</b> within the column. Word breaks only occur at spaces between words. <b>i</b> specifies the number of spaces to indent the first line. <b>i</b> may be positive or negative. A positive <b>i</b> generates a normal paragraph indent. A negative <b>i</b> with an equal, but positive <b>n</b> generates a hanging indent paragraph.

Examples: L5

W5,20,-5

(Creates an 20 character per line paragraph with a  
5 character hanging indent)

### Multi-value Select (3,6)

System ID	DET.MV
Field Number	33
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes listed below
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a string which is used to control the output of multi-valued fields within each column. This option both selects which values to output, and specifies how to connect the values. Concatenate, the most general option, is entered as follows:

Cn,m,x

The **C** is required to specify the concatenation option. The **n** is an integer which specifies the starting value to select for output from the multi-valued field. The **m** is an integer which specifies the last value to be output from the multi-valued field. The **x** is a character string which is to be inserted between each value.

Examples:	C1,1	(Output first value only)
	C1,5,-	(Output first 5 values and separate values with a -.)
		Output: Cu-Zn-Pb)
	C1,99,	(Output all values separated with a space. There must be a space following the last comma.)
		Output: Cu Zn Pb)
	C5,10,,	(Output values 5 through 10 separated with a comma and a space. There must be a space following the last comma.)
		Output: Cu, Zn, Pb)

The **N** option is a special case of concatenation. It is used when each value is to be output on a separate line. The format is:

Nn,m

The **N** tells the system to use a New line for each value. The **n** is an integer which specifies the starting value to select for output from the multi-valued field. The **m** is an integer which

specifies the last value to be output from the multi-valued field.

With either option, 99 may be used for *m* to specify the output of all values from the multi-valued field. After the values have been read and concatenated to form a character string, the column format is applied to the entire string.

#### Record Sep (3,7)

System ID	SP8
Field Number	34
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes in Chapter 6
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a string which is used to control what is output after the data record. See Separators, Chapter 6.

#### Minor Footer (3,8)

System ID	MIN.FOOT
Field Number	35
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a multi-valued record footer to be printed at the end of each record of the report. Information from any field or combination of fields from the data record can be included in the record footer by using the `|key|` syntax (see Chapter 6).

#### Examples:

This is the first record footer example

(A simple record footer containing a text string to be output at the end of each record)

`|SITE|, |COUNTY| County, |STATE|`

(`|fieldname|` causes the contents of the specified field to be inserted in the record footer)

**Minor Footer Format (3,9)**

System ID	MIN.FOOT.FOR
Field Number	36
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes in Chapter 6
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field is used to format the record footer. If this field is left blank, the record footer will be left-justified in column 1. See Line Formatting, Chapter 6.

**Minor Footer Sep (3,10)**

System ID	SP9
Field Number	37
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match codes in Chapter 6
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a string which is used to control what is output after the record footer. See Separators, Chapter 6.

**Print District Records (3,11)**

System ID	DET.SEL
Field Number	52
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must be "Y" or "N"
Entry Required?	No
Default	N
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field is used as a flag to cause output or suppression of output of summary (district or area) records. Entering Y or y in this field causes all data records with REC.TYPE containing "A" (summary records) to be output along with the site records. Entering N or n causes suppression of the output of records with REC.TYPE containing "A". If this field is left blank, area records will not be output.

## Appendix XI. PLOT PARAMETER DATABASE

### MD.PLOT field names:

PNAME	Name of plot setup record
NLAT	Northern latitude limit of plot
SLAT	Southern latitude limit of plot
ELONG	Eastern longitude limit of plot
WLONG	Western longitude limit of plot
NSCALE	North-south scale
ESCALE	East-west scale
ROTATE	Rotation of plot on paper
NTICK	North-south tick mark interval
ETICK	East-west tick mark interval
TICK.SIZE	Size of tick mark
TICK.PEN	Pen number for tick mark
XOFF	X-axis offset, in inches
YOFF	Y-axis offset, in inches
SYM.CODE	Code number of symbol
SYM.PEN	Pen number for symbol plot
SYM.HT	Height of symbol, in inches
SYM.CRIT	Selection criteria for plot symbol
POST.FIELD	Field name to extract label information from
POST.PEN	Pen number for label plot
POST.HT	Height of label character
POST.WIDTH	Width of label character
POST.CRIT	Selection criteria for labeling
LINE.CODE	Code number for type of line to plot
LINE.PEN	Pen number for line plot
LINE.CRIT	Selection criteria for line plot
NOTES	Description of plot to be created

### MD.PLOT Field Descriptions

(prompt name is followed by prompt number)

#### Plot Name (1)

System ID	PNAME
Field Number	0
Field Type	Key
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	Yes
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a unique, one-word name for the plot being described. It is the key field for this file and is used to retrieve the plot information for modification or plotting. To enter a new set of plot parameters, enter a unique plot name. To edit an existing set of parameters, enter an existing plot name.

Existing records may also be retrieved (and edited) by entering a search parameter instead of a record name. For more information on cross-referencing techniques, see the discussion in Chapter 5.

Fields which can be cross-referenced:

Field Prompt	System ID
N-S Scale	NSCALE
Notes	NOTES

### **N Latitude (2)**

System ID	NLAT
Field Number	1
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match format given below
Entry Required?	Yes
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the latitude of the northern boundary of the desired plot area. Acceptable formats are: **dd mm ss N** or **dd mm ss S**. All four parts of the latitude must be present and separated by spaces. Degrees, minutes, and seconds must be integers of one or two digits. The latitude of the northern limit must be north of the latitude of the southern limit.

Examples: 39 33 21 N  
 3 5 10 S  
 0 0 1 N

### **S Latitude (3)**

System ID	SLAT
Field Number	2
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match format given below
Entry Required?	Yes
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the latitude of the southern boundary of the desired plot area. Acceptable formats are: **dd mm ss N** or **dd mm ss S**. All four parts of the latitude must be present and separated by spaces. Degrees, minutes, and seconds must be integers of one or two digits. The latitude of the southern limit must be south of the latitude of the northern limit.

Examples: 39 33 21 N  
 3 5 10 S  
 0 0 1 N

#### **E Longitude (4)**

System ID	ELONG
Field Number	3
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match format given below
Entry Required?	Yes
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the longitude of the eastern boundary of the desired plot area. Acceptable formats are: **ddd mm ss E** or **ddd mm ss W**. Degrees must be an integer of one, two, or three digits. Minutes and seconds must be integers of one or two digits. The longitude of the eastern boundary must be east of the longitude of the western boundary.

Examples: 178 35 23 E  
 45 0 31 W  
 0 0 5 E

#### **W Longitude (5)**

System ID	WLONG
Field Number	4
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must match format given below
Entry Required?	Yes
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the longitude of the western boundary of the desired plot area. Acceptable formats are: **ddd mm ss E** or **ddd mm ss W**. Degrees must be an integer of one, two, or three digits. Minutes and seconds must be integers of one or two digits. The longitude of the western boundary must be west of the longitude of the eastern boundary.

Examples: 178 35 23 E  
 45 0 31 W  
 0 0 5 E



**N-S Scale (6)**

System ID	NSCALE
Field Number	5
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must be an integer
Entry Required?	Yes
Default	
Cross-reference?	Yes
Description:	

This field contains the desired scale of the plot in the north-south direction. Only the denominator of the scale is entered, without commas. The north-south scale may be different from the east-west scale to provide adjustment for less-than-perfect base maps.

Example: enter 250000 to plot a 1:250,000 map.

**E-W Scale (7)**

System ID	ESCALE
Field Number	6
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must be an integer
Entry Required?	Yes
Default	N-S scale
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the desired scale of the plot in the east-west direction. Only the denominator of the scale is entered, without commas. The north-south scale and the east-west scale may be different to provide for less-than-perfect base maps.

Example: enter 24000 to plot a 1:24,000 map.

**Rotate X & Y axes? (8)**

System ID	ROTATE
Field Number	7
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must be a "Y" or "N"
Entry Required?	No
Default	N
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains a flag (Y or N) to tell the plot routine whether to rotate the X & Y axes on the paper when the plot is produced.

The default (N) produces a plot with the E-W axis parallel to the long edge of the paper.

### Tick Interval N-S (9)

System ID	NTICK
Field Number	8
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must match format given below
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the interval between tick marks in the north-south direction. Acceptable format is **dd mm ss**. All three parts of the interval must be present. Degrees, minutes, and seconds must be integers of one or two digits. If this field is left blank, no tick marks will be plotted.

This is a multi-valued field. Any number of sets of tick marks may be added to the plot. The system will prompt for the E-W interval, size, and pen number for each set of tick marks before it returns to prompt for the N-S interval for the next set of ticks. Move to the next field by pressing the **RETURN** key at the N-S Tick Interval prompt.

Examples: 10 0 0  
          0 15 0  
          0 0 30

### Tick Interval E-W (10)

System ID	ETICK
Field Number	9
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must match format given below
Entry Required?	No
Default	Tick Interval N-S
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the interval between tick marks in the east-west direction. Acceptable format is **dd mm ss**. All three parts of the interval must be present. Degrees, minutes, and seconds must be entered as an integer of one or two digits. If this field is left blank, no tick marks will be plotted.

Examples: 10 0 0  
          0 15 0  
          0 0 30

**T. Size (11)**

System ID	TICK.SIZE
Field Number	10
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must be numeric between -1.1 and 1.1
Entry Required?	No
Default	0.1
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the size of the tick marks in inches. Acceptable range is 0.001 to 1.10 in. A leading zero must be included for values less than 1.0. There are two formats for tick marks available. If the tick size is entered as a positive number, tick marks will be created throughout the plot. If the tick size is entered as a negative number, the tick marks will only be created along the boundaries of the plot.

**Tick Pen (12)**

System ID	TICK.PEN
Field Number	27
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must be an integer between 1 and 8
Entry Required?	No
Default	1
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the pen number to be used to plot the tick marks. Acceptable values are the single integers, 1-8.

**X-Offset (13)**

System ID	XOFF
Field Number	28
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must be a number
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the distance to offset the plot on the paper in the X-direction (east), measured in inches. The distance is measured from the left edge of the plot paper to the southwest corner of the plot. Most plotters will not allow plotting closer than about 0.4-0.8 inches from the edge of the paper. If a number is entered that is smaller than the minimum for the plotter (or the field is left blank), the plot program will substitute the minimum for the plotter in use. A leading zero must be entered for values less than 1.

**Y-Offset (14)**

System ID	YOFF
Field Number	29
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	Must be a number
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the distance to offset the plot on the paper in the Y-direction (north), in inches. The offset is measured from the bottom of the paper to the southwest corner of the plot. Most plotters will not allow plotting closer than about 0.4-0.8 inches from the edge of the paper. If a number is entered that is smaller than the minimum for the plotter (or the field is left blank), the plot program will substitute the minimum for the plotter in use. A leading zero must be entered for values less than 1.

**Symbol Code (15)**

System ID	SYM.CODE
Field Number	11
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must be an integer between 1 and 999 with an optional "F" prefix
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the code number for the symbol to be drawn at the location of the records selected in the **Selection Criteria** field. The current list of symbol codes is as follows:

1 = circle	F1 = filled circle
2 = square	F2 = filled square
3 = triangle	F3 = filled triangle
4 = diamond	F4 = filled diamond
5 = hexagon	F5 = filled hexagon
6 = plus	
7 = X	
8 = asterisk	

This is a multi-valued field. Any number of sets of plot symbols can be included on each plot. The system will prompt for the pen number, height of symbol, and selection criteria before returning to prompt for the code of the next set of symbols to plot. Move to the next set of fields by entering a blank at this prompt.

Symbol numbers 1 through 99 are reserved for system-defined symbols. Numbers 100 through 999 are reserved for user-defined

symbols. Directions for defining symbols are available in Chapter 6, section on User-Defined Symbols. Selecting a symbol number from 1 through 999 always plots an open symbol. If a filled symbol is desired, add an **F** to the beginning of the symbol number. Thus, symbol F1 is the filled equivalent of symbol 1 (circle); symbol F101 is the filled equivalent of symbol 101.

**Symbol Pen # (16)**

System ID	SYM.PEN
Field Number	12
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must be an integer between 1 and 8
Entry Required?	No
Default	1
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the number of the pen in the plotter carousel with which the symbol is to be plotted. Acceptable values are 1 through 8.

**Symbol Height (17)**

System ID	SYM.HT
Field Number	13
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must be a number between 0.001 and 1.1
Entry Required?	No
Default	0.1
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the height of the desired symbol in inches. Acceptable values are between 0.001 and 1.1. Leading zeroes are required for values less than 1.

**Symbol Sel. Criteria (18)**

System ID	SYM.CRIT
Field Number	14
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains criteria for the selection of records from the Locality database to be plotted with the selected symbol. Criteria may be composed of a single "WITH" clause such as: WITH COMMODITIES EQ "Cu", or more complicated boolean

expressions (see Chapter 6, section on Selection Criteria). Do not include "BY" clauses in the selection criteria. Field names (System ID) can be found on the individual help screens as well as in Appendix V. Leaving this field blank will select all records.

Examples: WITH STATE EQ "WA"  
 WITH COMMODITIES EQ "Au" OR WITH COMMODITIES EQ "Ag"  
 WITH DEP.CODE GE 40 AND WITH DEP.CODE LT 50

### Label Post Field (19)

System ID	POST.FIELD
Field Number	15
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must be a valid MD.DATA field name
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the name of the field in the Locality database that contains the value to be posted next to the indicated point. The names of the fields (system ID) in the MD.DATA file can be found on each individual help screen as well as in the field descriptions in Appendix V. If the field containing the post value is multi-valued, the value within the field to be posted may be indicated by adding (n,m) to the field name, where n = the number of the value desired and m = the maximum number of characters to post. Note that either n or m may be given alone. The default for n is 1; the default for m is 6.

Examples:	SITE	Posts the first 6 characters of the Site Name
	COMMODITIES(3)	Posts the first 6 characters of the third value in the Commodities field.
	ORE.MINERAL(2,8)	Posts the first 8 characters of the second value from the Ore Minerals field.
	ORE.MINERAL(,8)	Posts the first 8 characters of the first value from the Ore Minerals field.

This field is multi-valued. As many sets of posting parameters as desired may be entered. The system will prompt for the rest of the parameters for this set before returning to prompt for the next posting field.

**Label Pen # (20)**

System ID	POST.PEN
Field Number	16
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must be an integer between 1 and 8
Entry Required?	No
Default	1
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the number of the pen in the plotter carousel to be used to label the selected points. Acceptable values are 1 through 8.

**Label Char. Height (21)**

System ID	POST.HT
Field Number	17
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must be a number between 0.001 and 1.1
Entry Required?	No
Default	0.15
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the height of the label characters in inches. Acceptable values lie between 0.001 and 1.1. A leading zero must be entered for values less than 1.0.

**Label Char. Width (22)**

System ID	POST.WIDTH
Field Number	18
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must be a number between 0.001 and 1.1
Entry Required?	No
Default	2/3 of label height
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the width of the label characters in inches. Acceptable values lie between 0.001 and 1.1. A leading zero must be entered for values less than 1.0.

**Label Selection Criteria (23)**

System ID	POST.CRIT
Field Number	19
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains criteria for the selection of records from the Locality database to have labels posted next to them. The actual value posted is obtained from the field, **Post Field**. Selection criteria may be composed of a single "WITH" clause such as: WITH COMMODITIES EQ "Mo", or may be more complicated boolean expressions (see Chapter 6, section on Selection Criteria). Do not include "BY" clauses in the selection criteria. Field names (System ID) can be found on the individual help screens as well as in Appendix V. Leaving this field blank will select all records.

Examples: WITH STATE EQ "WA"  
WITH COMMODITIES EQ "Au" OR WITH COMMODITIES EQ "Ag"  
WITH DEP.CODE GE 40 AND WITH DEP.CODE LT 50

**Line Type Code (24)**

System ID	LINE.CODE
Field Number	20
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must be an integer between 0 and 6
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the code number for the type of line to be plotted. Currently defined line codes are:

0 = Solid  
1 = Dotted  
2 = Short Dash  
3 = Long Dash  
4 = Dash - Dot  
5 = Long Dash - Short Dash  
6 = Long Dash - 2 Short Dashes

This is a multi-valued field. As many sets of line parameters as desired may be entered. The system will prompt for the pen number and selection criteria for this line type before returning to prompt for the next line type code. Move to the next set of fields by pressing the **RETURN** key at the **Line Type Code** prompt.



**Line Pen # (25)**

System ID	LINE.PEN
Field Number	21
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	Must be an integer between 1 and 8
Entry Required?	No
Default	1
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the number of the pen in the plotter carousel to be used to plot the selected lines. Acceptable values are 1 through 8.

**Line Sel. Criteria (26)**

System ID	LINE.CRIT
Field Number	22
Field Type	Multi-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains criteria for the selection of records from the Locality and Area Outline databases for plotting as areas or lines. Criteria may be composed of a single "WITH" clause such as: WITH REC.TYPE EQ "AM", or more complicated boolean expressions (see Chapter 6, section on Selection Criteria). Do not include "BY" clauses in the selection criteria. Field names (System ID) can be found on the individual help screens as well as in Appendix V. Leaving this field blank will select all records.

There is a special case for this Selection Criteria field. Entry of the keyword **BOUNDARY** in the Selection Criteria will draw a line of the type defined in the **Line Type Code** field around the boundary of the map as defined by the latitude/longitude limits.

Examples: WITH STATE = "WA"  
WITH REC.TYPE EQ "AM" OR WITH REC.TYPE EQ "AN"  
WITH REC.TYPE EQ "AM" AND WITH DISTRICT EQ "Leadville"  
BOUNDARY

**Notes (27)**

System ID	NOTES
Field Number	23
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	Yes
Description:	

This field may contain any notes that the user desires to keep with the plot definition. It has no effect on the actual plot. If key words which describe the plot are entered in this field, it is easy to recall the Plot Parameter entry screen by cross-referencing on this field.

As much information as needed may be entered in this field. Only one line is provided on the display screen; however, more information may be entered by continuing to type beyond the edge of the screen. Although only one line of information will be displayed on the screen, all of the information will be stored in the record and will be available for output.

## Appendix XII. USER-DEFINED SYMBOL DATABASE

### MD.SYM field names:

SYM.NO	Symbol number
NAME	Name of symbol
S.LINES	Simple line graphic commands
P.LINES	Polygon line graphic commands
NOTES	Description of Symbol

### MD.SYM Field Descriptions

(prompt name is followed by prompt number)

#### Symbol No. (1)

System ID	SYM.NO
Field Number	0
Field Type	Key
Input Checking	Must be an integer between 1 and 999
Entry Required?	Yes
Default	Next available empty record number
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the symbol number which is used by the plotting program to call up the symbol definition. The symbol number must be a 1 to 3 digit integer. User-defined symbols should use the numbers 100 through 999 to avoid conflict with system-defined symbols which use numbers less than 100. To edit an existing symbol, enter the symbol number. To enter a new symbol, press the **RETURN** key.

Entering the symbol number in the Plot Parameter entry screen causes the symbol to be plotted in a skeletal form. Entering the symbol number with an "F" prefix causes the symbol to be plotted with a filled polygon if the plotter supports automatic polygon fills (PM command in HPGL).

Example:    101            User-defined symbol. To plot in skeletal form, enter 101 in the Plot Parameter entry screen; to plot in filled form, enter F101 in the entry screen.

Existing records may also be retrieved (and edited) by entering a search parameter instead of a record number. For more information on cross-referencing techniques, see the discussion in Chapter 5.

#### Fields which can be cross-referenced:

Field Prompt	System ID
Symbol Name	NAME
Notes	NOTES

**Symbol Name (2)**

System ID	NAME
Field Number	1
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	Yes
Description:	

This field contains the name of the user-defined symbol. This is strictly for the user's convenience; entry into this field has no effect on the drawing of the symbol. The major use of this field is for finding a symbol to edit by cross-referencing on the name. See the **Symbol No.** field description, p. 205.

Example: Circle with included square box.

**Simple Lines (3)**

System ID	S.LINES
Field Number	2
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the string which describes the parts of the symbol which are not part of a fillable polygon. The string is entered in pseudo-HPGL. Start by assuming that the pen is at the location of the center of the symbol and that the pen is up. The general procedure is to move to the beginning of a line segment with a pen-up command and then to draw a line segment with a pen-down command. Pen-up and pen-down commands are followed by X and Y coordinates. All coordinates are factors to be multiplied by the height of the symbol. For example, the following string would draw a plus symbol to the height and width defined by the symbol height in the Plot Parameter entry screen:

PU,0.5,0;PD,-1.0,0;PU,0.5,0.5;PD,0,-1.0

All X,Y coordinates are relative to the last position. Command names and coordinates are separated by commas. Commands are separated by semi-colons. All coordinate factors (except 0) should be given with a decimal point and leading or trailing zero, as appropriate.

The pen-down command can be followed by several sets of coordinate factors. For example, the following string will plot a square box the size of the symbol height:

PU,0.5,0.5;PD,-1.0,0,0,-1.0,1.0,0,0,1.0

Plotter commands which can be included in the string are limited to the following:

AR - Arc  
CI - Circle  
ER - Rectangle  
EW - Wedge  
PD - Pen-down  
PU - Pen-up  
SP - Select Pen

For more information on the use of these commands, see the appropriate plotter programming manual.

### **Poly. Lines (4)**

System ID	P.LINES
Field Number	3
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	No
Description:	

This field contains the string which describes the parts of the symbol which make up the outline of a fillable polygon. Start by assuming that the pen is at the location of the center of the symbol and that the pen is up. The general procedure is to move to the beginning of the polygon outline with a pen-up command (PU) and then to draw the outline with a pen-down command (PD). Pen-up and pen-down commands are followed by X and Y coordinates. All coordinates are factors to be multiplied by the height of the symbol. For example, the following string would define the outline of a diamond the full symbol height and half as wide:

PU,0.25,0;PD,-0.25,0.5,-0.25,-0.5,0.25,-0.5,0.25,0.5

All X,Y coordinates are relative to the last position. Command names and coordinates are separated by commas. Commands are separated by semi-colons. All coordinate factors (except 0) should be given with a decimal point and leading or trailing zero, as appropriate. A pen-down command may be followed by several coordinates.

Plotter commands which can be included in the string are limited to the following:

AR - Arc  
CI - Circle  
PD - Pen-down  
PU - Pen-up  
PM - Polygon mode

For more information on the use of these commands, see the appropriate plotter programming manual and the section on User-defined Symbols, Chapter 6.

#### Notes (5)

System ID	NOTES
Field Number	4
Field Type	Single-valued
Input Checking	
Entry Required?	No
Default	
Cross-reference?	Yes
Description:	

This field contains notes describing the symbol being defined. It is included for the convenience of the user and has no effect on the plotting of the symbol. It is usually used for a more detailed description of the symbol and/or for a description of how the symbol is typically used.

## REFERENCES CITED

- Elliott, J. E., Loen, J. S., Wise, K. K., and Blaskowski, M. J., 1986, Mines and prospects of the Butte 1°x2° quadrangle, Montana: U. S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 86-0632, 153 p.
- Foley, J. D. and Van Dam, Andries, 1983, Fundamentals of interactive computer graphics: Addison Wesley, 664 p.
- Selner, G. I., Taylor, R. B., and Johnson, B. R., 1986, GSDRAW and GSMAP version 3.0: Prototype programs for the IBM PC or compatible microcomputers to assist compilation and publication of geologic maps and illustrations: U. S. Geological Survey Open-File Reports 86-447A and 86-447B, 53 p. plus computer disks.
- Taylor, R. B., Selner, G. I., and Johnson, B. R., 1986, GS MRDS - A system based on the data fields used in the national MRDS system but using dBASE III and a microcomputer (IBM PC or compatible) for organizing data on mineral resource occurrences and providing tabular and graphic output: U. S. Geological Survey Open-File Reports 86-450A and 86-450B, 69 p. plus computer disk.

## INDEX

!, 24, 28, 29, 37, 50, 67, 81, 82, 98

", 28, 98

#, 47, 108

(), 68

{}, 12

[], 12, 55, 109, 151

., 48, 108

\*, 109, 198

:, 12, 67

&lt;, 24, 28, 29, 50, 98

=, 49, 50, 98

&gt;, 12, 24, 28, 29, 50, 76, 98

?, 80, 81, 98, 118

\, 45, 46, 47, 50, 98

\$BP.U, 113

(E), 68

(N), 68

(P), 68

^, 51, 98

^A, 51, 98

^C, 51, 98

^D, 51, 97, 98

^E, 97

^F5, 97

^I, 51, 98

^left, 24, 50, 97

^right, 24, 50, 97

^T, 97

^X, 97

|, 57

DT|, 57, 104

fieldname|, 57, 104

key| Syntax, 57, 104

PN|, 57, 104

Rn,x|, 57, 104

0 key, 39

01&gt;, 27

1 key, 41

2° Quad Name, 31, 37, 134

2 key, 41

2DEG.QUAD, 134

A key, 39

Abbreviations, 22, 32, 96, 115, 143, 144, 155



Account, 14, 18, 94, 113, 116, 117  
Account name, 14, 113, 116, 117  
Accuracy, 2, 23, 135, 136  
Acknowledgments, 6  
Adapter, 118, 158, 160  
ADD, 29, 41, 51, 98  
Add another line, 41  
AFFIL, 129  
Affiliation, 22, 31, 129, 155  
Age, 30, 32, 143, 144  
ALn, 58, 105  
Alteration, 33, 146  
AR, 58, 86, 105, 207, 208  
Arc, 86, 87, 207, 208  
Archiving, 91  
Area, 39, 53, 63, 79, 81, 130, 131, 132, 156, 191, 193, 194, 203  
Area Outline database, 8, 9, 53, 81, 115, 156  
ARn, 58, 105  
Ascending, 56  
ASCII, 56, 122, 171, 172  
ASSOC.AGE, 144  
ASSOC.ROCK, 144  
Associated igneous rock, 32, 127  
Associated Igneous Rock Age, 144  
Associated Igneous Rock Description, 144  
Asterisk, 109, 198  
ATTACH, 113  
AUTH.NAME, 151  
Authors, 35, 151  
Axes, 195

Back-up Data Files, 18, 91  
Back-up program, 91, 94  
Background, 110, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162  
Backslash, 45, 46, 47, 50, 98  
Backspace, 24, 50, 97  
Bars, 57, 104  
BASIC, 122, 123  
Baud rate, 39, 123, 124, 162, 163, 164, 165  
Beep, 39  
Begins with, 55, 109  
Blinking, 110, 158  
Boolean Operators, 109  
Boundaries, 41, 81, 82, 194, 197, 203  
BOUNDARY, 81, 203  
Braces, 12, 151  
Branch of Central Mineral Resources, 149  
Build Cross-References, 18  
BY Clause, 56  
BY-DSND, 56

C key, 41  
C9000.BAS, 122  
C9100.BAS, 122  
Cable, 122, 123

Cadastral, 31  
Calcomp Digitizer, 3, 37, 122, 123, 164  
Carousel, 199, 201, 203  
Caution, 52, 53, 93, 125  
Center, 58, 105, 188  
CGA, 4, 160  
Change prompt, 23, 28, 29, 44, 61, 63, 87, 118, 119  
Change system variables, 18, 118  
CHANGE-PASSWORD, 125  
Char. per Line, 59, 170  
Character, 12, 24, 28, 45, 50, 57, 58, 97, 104, 105, 106, 110, 130, 141, 158, 170, 171, 172, 188, 189  
Character Height, 81  
Character Width, 81  
CHEAD, 177  
CHEAD.REP, 178  
CI, 86, 207, 208  
Circle, 86, 87, 109, 198, 207, 208  
Citation, 35, 152  
Clause, 55, 56, 178, 182, 183, 199, 200, 202, 203  
Clear, 23, 24, 29, 50, 51, 97, 98, 125  
CLEAR-FILE, 125  
CLS, 125  
CMR Number, 149  
CMR.NO, 149  
Cn, 106, 189  
Col. Head Repeat, 178  
Col. Head Sep., 178  
Colon prompt, 12, 67, 116  
Color Choices, 97, 110, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162  
Column, 58, 61, 63, 65, 105, 177, 178, 187, 188, 189  
Column Fieldnames, 63, 187  
Column Format, 63, 188  
Column format codes, 105  
Column Header, 61, 167, 177  
Column Width, 63, 188  
COM1, 123  
COM2, 123  
Command Level, 14, 51, 67, 94, 117, 123, 125  
COMMENT, 147, 169  
Commodities, 27, 31, 137  
COMMODITIES, 137  
Communications, 39, 81, 124, 164, 165  
Communications port, 162, 164, 165  
Concatenate, 58, 105, 106, 189  
Configuration, 18, 118, 122  
Connecting, 37, 122, 124  
Continue a line, 41  
Control keys, 24, 50, 97  
Control-F5, 14  
Conventions, 11  
Coordinates, 86, 206, 207  
Copy, 18, 51, 91, 97, 98, 125  
COPY Command, 51, 125  
Copy of the record, 52

Corner, 39, 197, 198  
Correction, 28  
Correspondence quality, 171, 172  
COUNT, 125  
Counter, 128  
Country, 22, 31, 134, 155  
County, 31, 132  
COUNTY, 132  
Cross-reference field list, 107  
Cross-reference indexes, 48  
Cross-reference screen, 47, 108  
Cross-referencing, 20, 44, 48, 128, 150, 153, 168, 193, 205  
Ctrl-D, 23, 28  
Ctrl-E, 23, 28  
Ctrl-T, 23, 28  
Current account, 91, 92, 93, 94, 126  
Cursor, 22, 24, 26, 50, 97  
Cursor control keys, 26  
Cursor-down, 14, 22, 26  
Cursor-left, 22, 26  
Cursor-right, 22, 26  
Cursor-up, 14, 22, 26  
  
D key, 42, 53  
Dashed line, 81, 109, 202  
Data bits, 122, 124, 163, 164, 165  
Data entry, 26  
Data entry defaults, 26  
Data validation, 27  
DATA.FNAMES, 115  
Database, 2, 8  
Database definitions, 127  
Database manager, 8  
Database system, 8  
Date, 31, 57, 128, 151  
DATE, 128  
DBL-SPC, 70  
Default, 13, 23, 26, 50, 98  
Default record number, 49  
Del, 24, 39, 50, 97  
Delete, 23, 24, 26, 28, 29, 42, 50, 51, 52, 97, 98, 125  
DELETE Command, 52, 125  
DELETE-ACCOUNT, 125  
DEP.CODE, 137  
DEP.TYPE, 137  
Deposit Code, 31, 137  
Deposit Description, 33, 147  
Deposit Type, 31, 137  
Deposit type codes, 100, 138  
Descending, 56  
DESCRIPTION, 147  
Design, 2  
DET.COL, 187  
DET.FN, 187  
DET.FOR, 188

DET.MV, 189  
DET.SEL, 191  
DET.WIDTH, 188  
Digi-Pad, 3, 37, 164  
Digitize Locations, 16  
Digitizer, 3, 37, 39, 118, 122, 163, 164  
Digitizer Comm. Port, 164  
Digitizer Comm. Speed, 164  
Digitizer Keypad, 39  
Digitizer Type, 163  
Digitizing, 16, 37, 53  
Digitizing entry instructions, 40  
Direction, 39, 41, 77, 195  
Directory, 115  
Disk, 3, 67, 76, 91, 112, 115, 170  
Display, 4, 67, 118, 158, 160, 161, 162  
Display Colors, 110  
Display Type, 160  
Distribution disks, 115  
District, 30, 132, 191  
DISTRICT, 132  
Dn, 29, 51, 98  
DOS, 12, 115, 125, 126  
Dotted line, 81, 109, 202  
Double space, 70  
Drives, 112  
DT, 173, 174, 176  
Dummy records, 81  
DUMP, 70, 74  
Duplicate a record, 51  
  
E Longitude, 194  
East-west scale, 195  
Eastern boundary, 194  
Edit, 44  
Edit Locality data, 14  
Edit References, 16, 35  
EGA, 4, 160  
Eject, 68, 126  
ELONG, 194  
Ends with, 55, 109  
Entry Date, 31, 128  
Entry Screens, 20  
EQ, 55, 109  
Equal, 55, 109  
ER, 86, 207  
Erase records, 52  
Erasing, 52  
Error recovery, 42  
Esc, 97  
ESCALE, 195  
ETICK, 196  
EW, 86, 189, 207  
Examples, 46, 52, 55, 62, 65, 70, 76, 86, 88, 89, 95, 105, 130,  
142, 143, 144, 145, 151, 152, 154, 155, 163, 168, 169,

170, 171, 172, 173, 174, 176, 177, 178, 179, 181, 182,  
183, 184, 185, 186, 187, 188, 189, 190, 193, 194, 195,  
196, 200, 202, 203, 205, 206, 207  
Exit Revelation, 18, 126  
Extension, 93, 115  
  
F1, 24, 50, 80, 81, 97  
F2, 28, 97  
F3, 97  
F7, 24, 50, 97  
F8, 24, 50, 97  
F9, 14, 51, 67, 89, 97, 117, 119  
Field, 9  
File, 8  
File a record, 50  
Fillable polygon, 207  
Filled polygon, 205  
Filled symbol, 87, 199  
FNAME, 129  
Font, 59, 171, 172  
Foot Format, 177  
Foot Repeat, 176  
FOOT.FOR, 177  
FOOT.REP, 176  
Footer, 61, 176, 177, 182, 183, 184, 190, 191  
Foreground, 110, 158, 159  
FORM Command, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74  
Form feed, 68  
Formatting, 58, 59, 105, 173, 175, 177, 180, 181, 183, 185, 186,  
188, 191  
Function keys, 24, 50, 97  
  
GE, 55, 109, 200, 202  
General Principles, 8  
Geologic age, 143  
Geologic age abbreviations, 103, 143  
Geologic symbols, 82  
Given names, 22, 154  
GS MRDS, 6, 209  
GSDRAW, 4, 82, 209  
GSMAP, 4, 82, 209  
GSMODS Reports, 56  
GT, 55, 109  
GTCO Digitizer, 3, 37, 122, 164  
GWBASIC, 123  
  
Handshake, 124  
Hardware configuration, 118  
Hardware installation, 122  
Hardware requirements, 3  
HEAD, 174  
Head Format, 61, 175  
Head Note, 61, 167, 174  
Head Repeat, 175  
Head Sep, 175

HEAD.FOR, 175  
HEAD.REP, 175  
Header, 61, 63, 177, 178, 180, 181, 182, 186, 187  
Height, 80, 86, 87, 199, 201  
HELP, 126  
Help screen, 50, 97, 98  
Hewlett-Packard, 4, 86, 124, 165  
Hewlett-Packard Graphics Language, 86  
Hexagon, 89, 109, 198  
Highlight Text Color, 161  
Home, 22, 24, 26, 50, 97  
Host Lithology, 142  
Host rock, 32, 142  
Host Rock Age, 143  
Host Rock Name, 32, 142  
HPGL, 86, 205  
HR.AGE, 143  
HR.LITH, 142  
HR.NAME, 142  
Hyphen, 27, 28, 58, 81  
  
ID-SUPP, 70  
Indent, 58, 105, 188  
Index, 48, 210  
Information Source, 131  
Initials, 20, 153  
Insert, 22, 24, 26, 29, 50, 51, 57, 97, 98  
Installation, 112, 122  
Interface, 118, 122  
Introduction, 2  
  
Justify, 58, 105  
  
KEY, 147  
Keywords, 12, 81, 147, 203  
  
Label, 79, 80, 192, 201  
Label Char. Height, 201  
Label Char. Width, 201  
Label Pen #, 201  
Label Post Field, 200  
Label Selection Criteria, 202  
Lambert Conformal Conic, 23  
Last Name, 22, 154  
Latitude, 31, 39, 53, 135, 156, 193, 203  
LATITUDE, 135, 156  
LE, 55, 109  
Left-justify, 58, 105, 188  
Limit, 59, 68, 81, 193, 203  
Line codes, 109, 202  
Line formatting, 58, 105  
Line Pen #, 203  
Line per Page, 59, 171  
Line Sel. Criteria, 203  
Line Type Code, 81, 202

LINE.CODE, 202  
LINE.CRIT, 203  
LINE.PEN, 203  
Linked multi-valued fields, 61, 79  
LIST Command, 68  
LISTFILES, 116, 126  
Lithologic description, 32  
Lithology, 142, 144  
Ln, 58, 105, 188  
LNAME, 45, 107, 129  
Loc. (Sec,T,R), 31, 136  
Locality database, 8, 9, 45, 115, 127  
Locality entry screen, 29, 30, 34  
Locality index, 115  
Locality Screen #1, 29  
Locality Screen #2, 32  
Locality Screen #3, 33  
Locality Screen #4, 33  
Login New Reporter, 16  
LOGTO Command, 117, 126  
Longitude, 31, 39, 53, 79, 136, 157, 194  
Lowercase, 12, 46  
LT, 55, 109  
  
Main Menu, 14, 15, 113, 117  
MAJ, 179  
MAJ.FOOT, 182  
MAJ.FOOT.FOR, 183  
MAJ.FOOT.SEL, 183  
MAJ.HEAD, 180  
MAJ.HEAD.FOR, 181  
MAJ.HEAD.SEL, 182  
MAJ.SEL, 178  
MAJ.TITLE, 179  
MAJ.TITLE.FOR, 180  
Major Footer Format, 183  
Major Footer Selection Criteria, 63, 183  
Major Footer Sep, 184  
Major Header Format, 181  
Major Header Sep, 181  
Major sections, 61, 167, 179, 180, 182, 184  
Major Section Footer, 63, 182  
Major Section Header, 63, 180  
Major Section Title, 63, 179  
Major Sort Field, 61, 179  
Major Title Format, 180  
Major Title Sep, 180  
Major Title/Header Sel Criteria, 57, 63, 104, 182  
Map, 23, 37, 77,  
Map Projections, 23  
MAX, 169  
Max. Records, 59, 169  
MD.AREA, 8, 9, 53, 115, 156  
MD.DATA, 8, 9, 115, 127  
MD.DATA.XR, 115

MD.PLOT, 8, 10, 115, 192  
MD.PLOT.XR, 115  
MD.REF, 8, 9, 115, 150  
MD.REF.XR, 115  
MD.REPORT, 8, 10, 115, 167  
MD.REPORT.XR, 115  
MD.SYM, 8, 10, 115, 205  
MD.SYM.XR, 115  
MD.SYS, 8, 10, 115, 158  
MD.USER, 8, 9, 115, 153  
MD.USER.XR, 115  
MDA, 158, 160  
Memo field, 148  
Memory, 4  
Menu System, 14  
MIN, 184, 186  
MIN.FOOT, 190  
MIN.FOOT.FOR, 191  
MIN.HEAD, 186  
MIN.HEAD.FOR, 186  
MIN.TITLE, 184  
MIN.TITLE.FOR, 185  
Mineral, 31, 33, 100, 137, 141, 145  
MINERAL.AGE, 143  
Mineralization, 32, 144, 146  
Mineralization Age, 143  
Minor Footer, 190  
Minor Footer Format, 191  
Minor Footer Sep, 191  
Minor Header, 63, 186  
Minor Header Format, 186  
Minor Header Sep, 187  
Minor sections, 61, 63  
Minor Sort Field, 63, 184  
Minor Title, 63, 184  
Minor Title Format, 185  
Minor Title Sep, 185  
Miscellaneous Comments, 33, 147  
MODS, 14, 67, 95  
Monochrome, 110, 118, 158, 160, 161, 162  
MRDS, 2, 149  
MRDS Number, 149  
MRDS.NO, 149  
MSDOS, 4, 12  
Multi-value Select, 63, 189  
Multi-value Selection Codes, 106, 189  
Multi-valued field, 9, 27, 29, 44, 80, 106, 189  
Multi-valued list, 98  
Multi-valued window, 29, 51, 98  
Multiple Accounts, 116  
  
N Latitude, 193  
NCOL, 170  
NE, 55, 109  
New account, 94, 117



NEW-LINE, 47  
NLAT, 193  
NLINE, 171  
Non-ore mineralogy, 33, 146  
NONORE.MINERAL, 146  
Normal Text Color, 160  
North-south scale, 37, 195  
Northern boundary, 193  
Notes, 33, 81, 148, 204, 208  
NOTES, 148, 204, 208  
NSCALE, 45, 107, 193, 195  
NTICK, 196  
Numeric co-processor, 4  
  
Offset, 79, 80, 197, 198  
OPEN statement, 123  
Open symbol, 199  
Ore controls, 33, 146  
Ore Minerals, 33, 145  
ORE.CONTROL, 146  
ORE.MINERAL, 145  
Output Device, 59, 67, 170  
Overflow, 92  
Overprint, 80  
Overwrite, 42, 53  
  
P.LINES, 207  
Page break, 170  
Page Break w/i Record, 59, 169  
Page eject, 70  
Page Footer, 61, 176  
Page number, 104, 108  
Page Repeating, 57, 104  
Parentheses, 70, 80  
Parity, 122, 124, 162, 163, 164, 165  
Password, 14, 113, 116, 125  
PCDOS, 4, 12  
PD, 86, 207, 208  
PDISK Command, 76, 126  
Pen, 79, 86, 206, 207  
Pen number, 79, 197, 199, 201, 203  
Pen-down, 86, 206, 207, 208  
Pen-up, 86, 206, 207, 208  
Period, 48, 108  
Personal or Proprietary Notes, 148  
PG#, 47, 108  
PGC, 160  
PgDn, 51, 98  
PgUp, 51, 98  
Pitch, 171, 172  
Plot a map, 17  
Plot labels, 80  
Plot line codes, 109  
Plot lines, 81  
Plot Name, 77, 192

Plot parameter, 5  
Plot Parameter database, 8, 10, 45, 115, 192  
Plot Parameter entry screen, 77, 78, 81  
Plot Parameter index, 115  
Plot program, 81  
Plot symbol codes, 109, 198  
Plot symbols, 80  
Plotter Comm. Port, 165  
Plotter Comm. Speed, 165  
Plotter Type, 165  
Plotting program, 82  
Plus, 109, 198  
PM, 86, 89, 208  
PN, 57, 104  
PNAME, 192  
Poly. Lines, 87, 89, 207  
Polyconic, 23  
Polygon, 87, 89, 206, 207  
Polygon line, 86, 87, 205  
Polygon mode, 86, 208  
Polygonal lines, 86, 87, 205  
Port, 3, 122, 162, 164, 165  
Post Field, 80  
POST.CRIT, 202  
POST.FIELD, 200  
POST.HT, 201  
POST.PEN, 201  
POST.WIDTH, 201  
Prefix, 198, 205  
Primary Quad, 31, 134  
Primary quadrangle, 37  
PRIME.QUAD, 134  
Print District Records, 63, 191  
PRINT.IN, 171  
PRINT.OUT, 172  
Printer Comm. Parameters, 162  
Printer Init, 59, 171  
Printer Port, 162  
Printer Reset, 59, 172  
Printer Width, 163  
PRN, 77, 126  
PROD.CODE, 141  
Produce a Report, 17  
Production Code, 32, 141  
Production Description, 27, 32, 141  
Projection, 23  
Proprietary information, 148  
Protection, 91  
Pseudo-HPGL, 206  
PU, 86, 89, 206, 207, 208  
Punctuation, 35, 151  
Push-button, 122  
  
Quadrangle, 37, 73, 134  
Quick reference, 97

Quit, 37, 92, 93, 94, 97, 98

RAM, 3

Range, 136

Re-digitizing, 42, 53

Re-direct, 77, 126

Re-start, 24, 37, 39, 42, 98, 117

REC.NO, 150

REC.TYPE, 63, 130, 191

RECORD, 128, 156

Record counters, 49, 98

Record No., 29, 39, 46, 49, 118, 119, 127, 128, 156, 159

Record Sep, 190

Record Type, 130

Rectangle, 86, 207

REF, 70

REF.CIT, 152

REF.DATE, 151

REF.NO, 148

Reference database, 8, 9, 45, 70, 115, 150

Reference entry screen, 35, 36

Reference index, 115

Reference No., 33, 148, 150

Reference Year, 35, 151

References, 16, 33, 35, 70, 76, 148

REFNUM, 70, 76

Registration, 39, 83

Rename, 93, 126

RENAME-FILE, 126

Report, 17, 56, 68, 104, 167

Report Example, 65

Report Name, 59, 168

Report Parameter database, 8, 10, 45, 115, 167

Report Parameter entry screen, 60, 62, 64

Report Parameter index, 115

Report Parameter Screen #1, 59

Report Parameter Screen #2, 61

Report Parameter Screen #3, 63

Report Parameter syntax, 104

Report Parameters, 56, 59

Report program, 66

Reporter, 16, 20, 31, 129, 153

REPORTER, 129

Reporter database, 8, 9, 45, 115, 153

Reporter entry screen, 20, 21

Reporter index, 115

Reporter's Initials, 20, 153

Requirements, 3, 4

Resolution, 156, 157

Restore, 18, 92

Restore Data Files, 18, 91

Restore program, 92, 93, 94

Restructuring, 92

Retrieving, 45

Revelation, 4

Revelation Command Level, 116  
Revelation commands, 125  
Revelation file names, 116  
Reverse Highlighted Text Color, 162  
Reverse Text Color, 161  
Right-justify, 58, 105, 188  
Rn, 58, 105, 188  
ROS file, 115  
ROSMEDIA.MAP, 115  
Rotate, 195  
Rotate X & Y axes?, 195  
Run-Time, 4, 67, 112

S Latitude, 193  
S.LINES, 206  
Sample, 38, 59, 60, 62, 64, 65, 66, 69, 71, 72, 73, 74, 77, 78  
Sample plot, 84, 85  
Scale, 37, 77, 135, 195  
SCALE, 135  
Scroll, 68, 126  
Search Keys, 33, 147  
Search parameter, 45, 128, 150, 153, 168, 193, 205  
Searching, 47, 55  
Sel. Criteria, 79  
SELECT Command, 76, 126  
Select Pen, 86, 207  
Selecting, 55, 76, 178, 182, 183, 199  
Selection Criteria, 55, 61, 76, 79, 80, 81, 109, 126, 178, 182, 183, 192, 200, 202, 203  
Selection list, 76  
Separators, 58, 174, 175, 178, 180, 181, 184, 185, 187, 190, 191  
Serial port, 81, 122, 123, 124, 162  
SETPTR, 115  
Setup, 118  
Setup Plot, 16  
Setup Report, 17  
Shading, 86  
Simple lines, 86, 87, 206  
Single space, 70  
Single-valued field, 9  
Site, 31, 129, 131  
SITE, 129  
Site Name, 31, 46, 48, 129  
Site Type, 131  
SITE.TYPE, 131  
Size, 22, 26, 59, 79, 80, 86, 197  
SLAT, 193  
Software Requirements, 4  
Sorting, 55, 61, 63, 76, 137, 178, 179, 184  
SOURCE, 131  
Southern boundary, 193  
SP, 86, 167, 168, 174, 175, 178, 180, 181, 184, 185, 187, 190, 191, 207  
Spacing, 171  
Special characters, 24, 28, 49, 50, 98

Special functions, 23  
Special terms, 98  
Special words, 97  
Speculations, 33, 147  
Speed, 123, 124  
Square, 89, 109, 198  
Start Char. No, 63, 187  
Starting, 13, 187  
State, 22, 31, 116, 133, 155  
STATE, 133  
States database, 116  
Stop, 24, 50, 98  
Stop bits, 122, 124, 163, 164, 165  
Stratigraphic controls, 146  
Structure, 8, 9  
Sub-directory, 112  
Sub-polygons, 54, 89  
Sub-string, 48, 55, 108, 109  
Subset, 47, 94, 108, 125  
Summary, 9  
Switches, 122, 124  
SYM.CODE, 198  
SYM.CRIT, 199  
SYM.HT, 199  
SYM.NO, 205  
SYM.PEN, 199  
Symbol Code, 79, 80, 198  
Symbol Height, 80, 199  
Symbol Name, 87, 206  
Symbol No., 87, 205  
Symbol Pen #, 199  
Symbol Sel. Criteria, 199  
Symbolic field, 57, 104  
Symbols, 5, 10, 12, 18, 19, 31, 54, 77, 78, 79, 80, 82, 86, 87,  
89, 96, 97, 137, 198, 199, 208  
Synonyms, 31, 130  
SYS.COL.HI, 161  
SYS.COL.HIREV, 162  
SYS.COL.NORM, 160  
SYS.COL.REV, 161  
SYS.COMMENTS, 166  
SYS.DIGIT.PORT, 164  
SYS.DIGIT.SPEED, 164  
SYS.DIGIT.TYPE, 163  
SYS.DISP.TYPE, 160  
SYS.PLOT.PORT, 165  
SYS.PLOT.SPEED, 165  
SYS.PLOT.TYPE, 165  
SYS.PRINT.COMM, 162  
SYS.PRINT.PORT, 162  
SYS.PRINT.WIDTH, 163  
SYS.REC.NO, 159  
SYSPROG, 112  
System clock, 31  
System date, 104, 126

System ID, 46  
System security, 91  
System Setup database, 8, 10, 115, 158  
System Setup entry screen, 118, 119, 120, 121  
System setup program, 118  
System-defined symbols, 198, 205

T. Size, 197  
TCL, 14, 51, 67  
Tectonic Setting, 32, 145  
TECTONICS, 145  
Terminal Command Level, 14, 51  
Text Fields, 27  
Tick Interval E-W, 196  
Tick Interval N-S, 196  
Tick mark, 79, 192, 196, 197  
Tick Pen, 197  
Tick Size, 197  
TICK.PEN, 197  
TICK.SIZE, 197  
Tickertape, 22  
Title, 35, 59, 61, 63, 152, 172, 173, 174, 179, 180, 182, 184, 185  
Title Format, 61, 173  
Title of Report, 61, 172  
Title Repeat, 61, 173  
Title Separator, 58, 61, 174  
TITLE.FOR, 173  
TITLE.REP, 173  
Township, 136  
Transformation, 23  
Triangle, 109, 198  
Truncated, 80

U.S. Postal Service, 22, 99, 133  
Underlined, 12  
Unfilled, 5, 87  
Universal Transverse Mercator, 23  
Updating, 5, 112  
Uppercase, 12, 22, 55, 57, 104, 113  
User-defined Symbol database, 8, 10, 45, 115, 205  
User-defined Symbol entry screen, 88  
User-defined Symbol index, 115  
User-defined Symbols, 18, 80, 86, 199, 205  
USER.AFFIL, 155  
USER.COUNTRY, 155  
USER.FNAME, 154  
USER.INIT, 153  
USER.LNAME, 154  
USER.STATE, 155  
Utilities Menu, 18, 19  
UTM, 23

Validation, 27, 116  
Verifying, 27

Video, 97, 118, 161  
VOC, 115

W Longitude, 194  
Warning, 92, 93  
Wedge, 86, 207  
Western boundary, 194  
Which Value? prompt, 51, 98  
Width, 58, 118, 163, 170, 201  
Window, 29, 51, 98  
WITH Clause, 55  
WLONG, 194  
Wn, 58, 105, 188  
Word-wrap, 27, 58, 105, 188

X-axis, 77  
X-direction, 197  
X-Offset, 197  
XOFF, 197  
XT, 3

Y-axis, 77  
Y-direction, 198  
Y-Offset, 198  
Year, 35, 151  
YOFF, 198